Content

A-Z

OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW 3 SERIES SEDAN.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A5F6E0 - VI/22

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest the following:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important notes on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and traffic safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A5F6E0 - VI/22

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6

QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in 16
Set-up and use 20
On the road 24

CONTROLS

Dashboard 32
Sensors of the vehicle 37
Operating condition of the vehicle 42
BMW iDrive 45
BMW Remote Software Upgrade 59
Personal settings 63
Opening and closing 70
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 101
Transporting children safely 115
Driving 121
Displays 138
Lights 159
Safety 167
Driving stability control systems 197
Driver assistance systems 201
Parking 226
Driving comfort 246
Climate control 247
Interior equipment 259
Storage compartments 265
Cargo area 269

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A5F6E0 - VI/22

DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving 276
Saving fuel 281

MOBILITY

Refueling 288
Wheels and tires 290
Engine compartment 320
Operating materials 323
Maintenance 330
Replacing components 332
Breakdown Assistance 336
Vehicle Care 343

REFERENCE

Technical data 348
Appendix 350
Everything from A to Z 352

© 2022 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID8 VI/22, -
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend reading the quick reference guide in the owner's manual.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Media at a glance

General information

The contents of the Owner's Manual are available in various media formats. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- ▷ Printed Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Swipe up or down until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Selecting context help from a menu

1. Press and hold the desired menu item.
2. "General help"

Selecting context help from a Check Control message

Directly from the Check Control message on the control display:

"Owner's Manual"

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Additional sources of information

Service center

An authorized service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, such as on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app shows all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

The BMW Driver's Guide Web shows all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The BMW Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Manual

Icon	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
♻	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
››...‹‹	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. These steps must be carried out in the order shown.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Bulletpoint lists

Items or actions without strict order or alternative options are shown as a bulletpoint list.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Icons on vehicle parts

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual shows all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates equipment, systems and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example due to the following situations:

- Selected optional equipment
- National-market version or national-market equipment
- Options for later release and software update

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

Before starting a journey, verify whether the described equipment or function is available in the vehicle. Information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle and if or when the function can be installed in the vehicle can be obtained from an authorized service center or other qualified service center.

A claim for the availability of equipment, a system or a function in the vehicle cannot be derived based on the description in the Owner's Manual.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any equipment and models not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may deviate from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applicable in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. Noncompliance with homologation requirements in a certain country may affect warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can lead to a failure or fault of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety hazard.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW maintenance system.

  Maintenance, refer to page 330.
- Maintenance Booklet, available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle.

A failure to maintain your vehicle or improper maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, such as via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel RPM, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged seat belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and is generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the state of a component, a module, a system, or the surrounding area, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, such as fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special driving situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to detect and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The diagnostic socket required by law in the vehicle is used to read out data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Chassis and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile devices can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile devices at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance, position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, it will enable data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's web page. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. This excludes functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the

relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- ▷ How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- ▷ Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were fastened.
- ▷ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- ▷ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

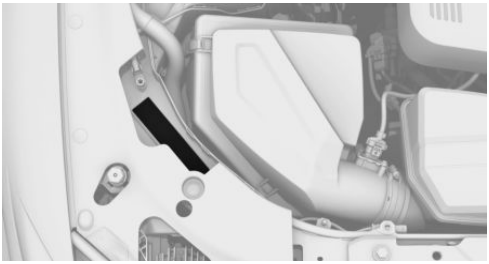
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market equipment, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all possible positions for the series.

Engine compartment



The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Vehicle ID (VIN):"

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, De-

fect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Getting in

Opening and closing

Vehicle key

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Remote Engine Start.
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode, pathway lighting.

Access to vehicle interior

Unlocking with the vehicle key

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

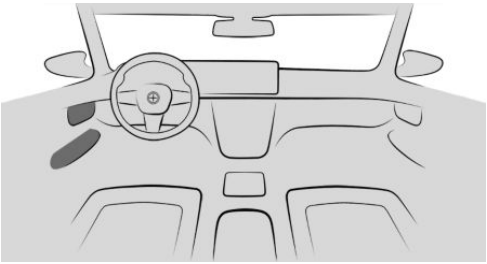
Locking with the vehicle key

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front door.

Lock.

Unlock.

Locking the vehicle

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

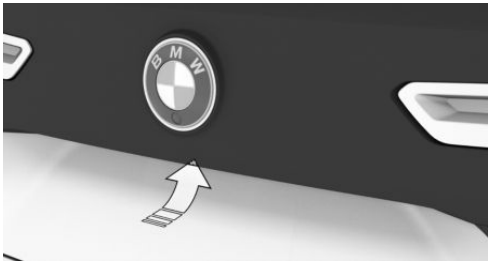
▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Access to the cargo area

Opening the cargo area



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outer side of the cargo area.

▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

Closing the cargo area manually

Depending on the equipment: pull down the trunk lid with the recessed grips.

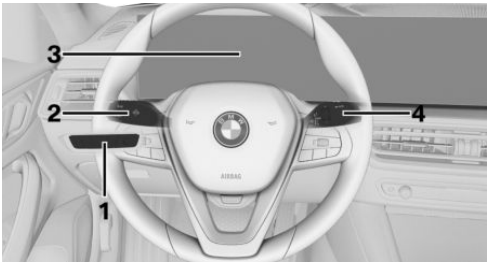
Closing the cargo area automatically

Depending on the equipment:

Press the button on the inside of the cargo area.

Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Light switch element

2 Turn signal indicator, high beams

3 Instrument cluster

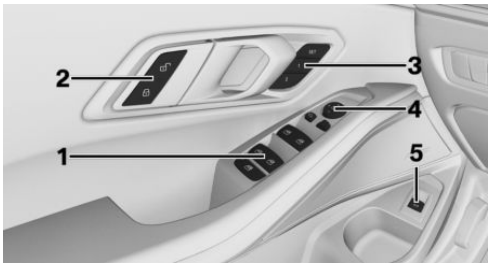
4 Wipers

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

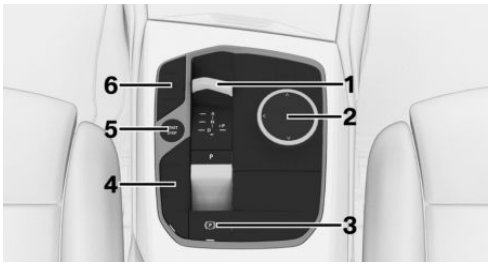
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Driver's door



1 Power windows
2 Central locking system
3 Seats, comfort features
4 Exterior mirrors
5 Opening/closing the trunk

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 Driving Dynamics Control
5 Start/Stop button
6 Assistance systems

BMW iDrive

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Call up the main menu.
MEDIA	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
TEL	Go to Phone menu.
MAP	Call up the navigation map.
NAV	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Go to previous display range.
OPTION	Call up the Options menu.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions.

Activating the voice control system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Say the command.

Canceling voice control

▷ Press the button on the steering wheel again.

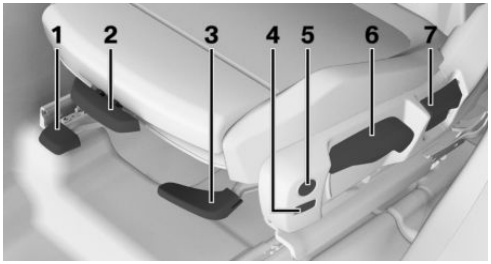
▷ ›Cancel‹

- ▷ Slide the Controller to the right or left.
- ▷ Press the Controller.

Set-up and use

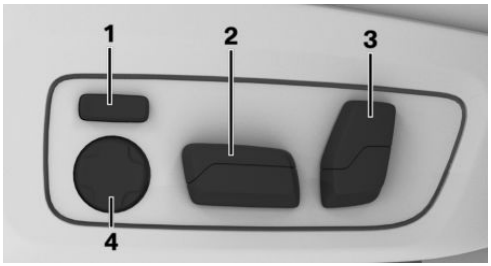
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Manually adjustable seats



1 Longitudinal direction
2 Thigh support
3 Seat tilt
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest tilt

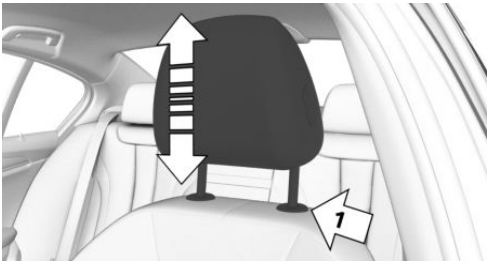
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Backrest width
2 Height/longitudinal direction/seat tilt
3 Head restraint/backrest tilt
4 Lumbar support

Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints

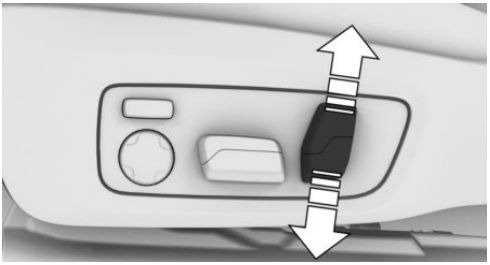


▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

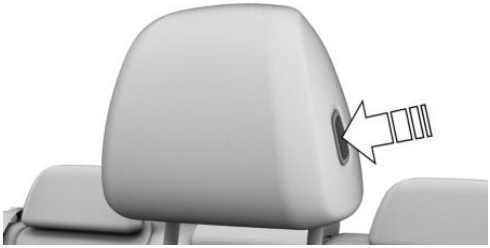
After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: electrical head restraints



Press switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance



- ▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

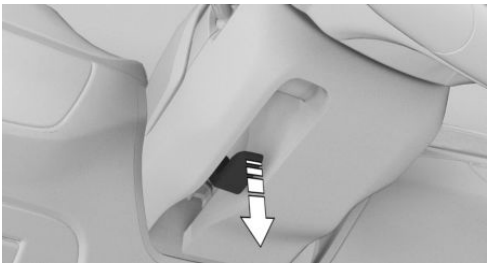
Adjusting distance: M sport seat

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirror in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.

Adjusting the steering wheel



1. Fold the lever down completely.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: height of the Head-up display.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Navigation destination input

1. "NAV"
2. "Destination input"
3. To enter a new destination or start guidance, tap on the search box or select entry from the search history.
4. Enter at least two characters.

   If necessary, start search for point of interest categories from the points of interest menu.

   If necessary, accept the suggested search keywords.
5. A list of the results is displayed.
6. Select the desired entry.

Entertainment

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the following buttons are installed in the center console.

Button	Function
	Turn the button to adjust the volume. Press the button to switch off the sound output. Pressing the button again restores the previous volume setting.
MEDIA	Change the entertainment source.
⏮	Press once: changes the station/track. Press and hold: fast forward/rewind the track.
⏭	

Using the mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Activate Bluetooth® on the mobile phone.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"

   Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.
5. Select the desired mobile phone.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.
7. If necessary, select the connection mode:

   "Use Bluetooth"

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

▷ Via iDrive:

"Accept"

▷

Press the button on the steering wheel.

▷ Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select from the list in the instrument cluster: "Accept"

Dialing a number

1. "TEL"
2. "More"
3. "Dial number"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the icon. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Turning off drive-ready state

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

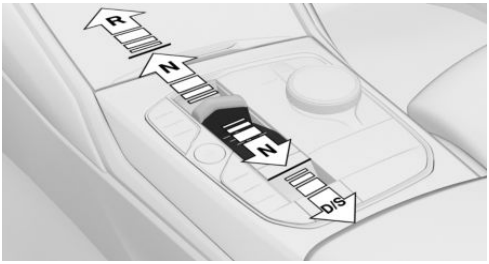
Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R, S



- D is drive.
- N is neutral.
- Reverse R.
- S Sport mode.

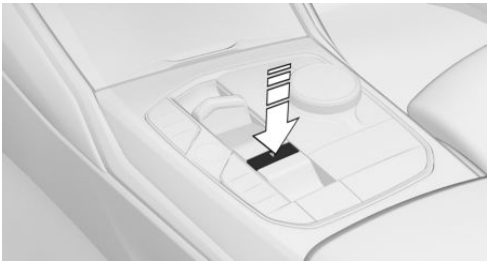
To prevent the vehicle from moving after engaging drive or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Sport program: the gearshift behavior is designed for a sportier driving behavior.

Engaging selector lever position P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing the parking brake

With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or with selector lever position P.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

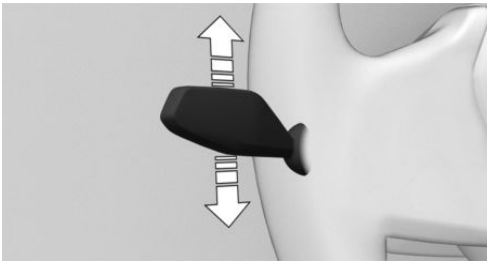
Parking

Make sure the parking brake is engaged.

Light and view

Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

Turn signal



- ▷ Blinking: press the lever past the resistance point.
- ▷ Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- ▷ Brief blinking: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to blink.

High beams, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

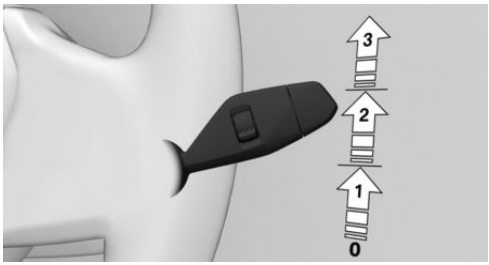
Lights and lighting

Buttons in the vehicle

Icon	Function
OFF	Lights off. Daytime driving lights.
	Parking lights.
AUTO	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive lighting functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Window wiper system

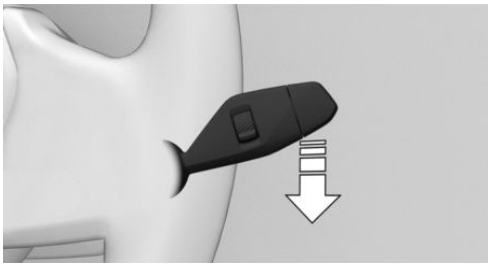
Turning on window wiper system



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor: position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe

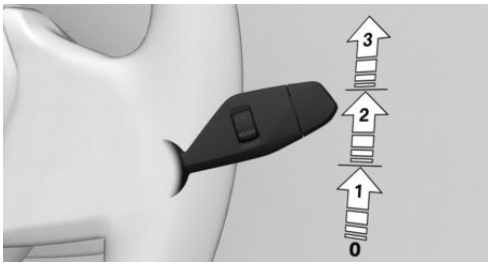


Press the lever down.

- ▷ Turning off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▷ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

  The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

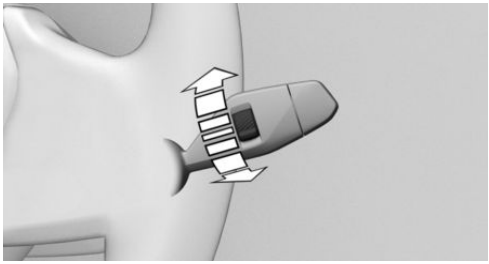
Activating/deactivating rain sensor



Enable: press lever up once from the 0 position, arrow 1.

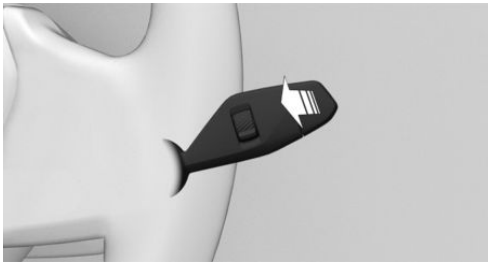
Disable: press lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

Climate control

Climate control functions

Functions via climate control menu

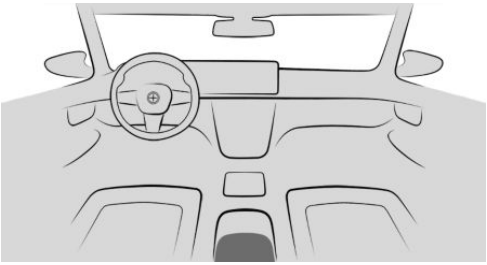
Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic program.
72.0°F	Temperature.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
A	Automatic recirculated-air control.
	Fresh air.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Seat heating.

The functions can also be operated via voice, such as Temperature.

Buttons, automatic climate control

Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.

Buttons, rear automatic climate control



Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic program.
▼ ▲	Temperature.
	Air distribution.
	Seat heating.
OFF	Switching off.

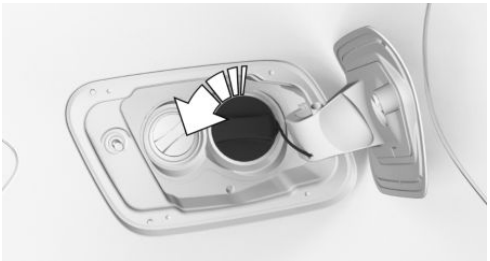
Intermediate stop

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Wheels and tires

Tire pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire pressure

If equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made. With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

Checking the tire pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before embarking on an extended trip.

Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning agents from BMW.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

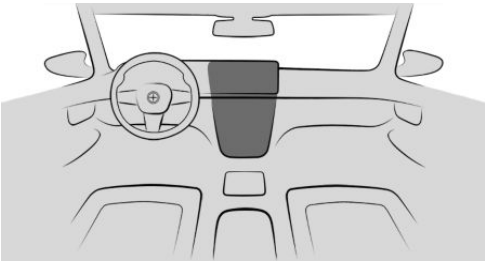
Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning system



Hazard warning system button

BMW Roadside Assistance

In many non-ConnectedDrive countries, BMW Roadside Assistance can be reached by phone

around the clock. You can obtain support there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

In ConnectedDrive countries, proceed as follows:

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. Select the desired service.

   A voice connection to the selected service is established.

ConnectedDrive

BMW Assistance

Contact BMW Assistance for information and support for all aspects of your vehicle.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. Select the desired service.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- ▷ BMW Roadside Assistance.
- ▷ BMW Accident Assistance.
- ▷ Teleservice Call.
- ▷ Your service center.

Dashboard

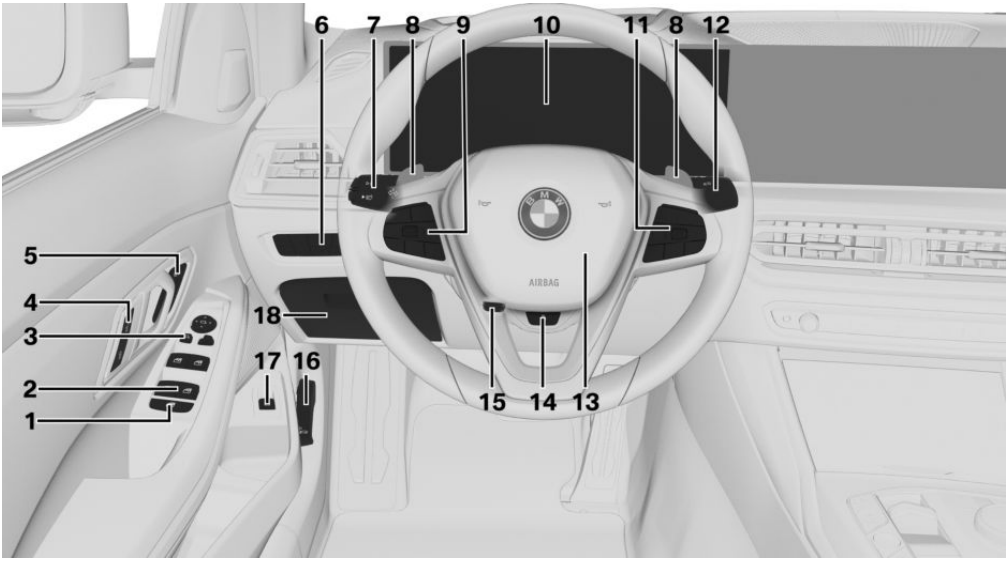
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Safety switch 96

2 Power windows, individual 94

3 Exterior mirror adjustment button 111

4 Central locking system 89

Unlocking

Locking

5 Seating comfort features

SET Memory function 113

6 Lights

Light switch 159

OFF Lights off

Daytime driving lights 162

Parking lights 160

AUTO Automatic headlight control 159
Adaptive lighting functions 162
Automatic High Beam Assistant 163

Low beams 160

Instrument lighting 164

Right roadside parking light 160

Left roadside parking light 160

7 Pitman arm, left

Turn signal 133

High beams, headlight flasher 134

Automatic High Beam Assistant 163

BC Trip data 152
g-meter 155

8 Shift paddles 126

9 Steering wheel buttons, left

LIM Manual Speed Limiter 203

Depending on the equipment:
Cruise Control on/off 205

Depending on the equipment:
Active Cruise Control on/off 208

MODE With Steering Assistant 218:
Cruise Control, Distance Control and lane guidance on/off

SET Cruise Control: store the speed
Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed 215

RES CANCEL Interrupt or continue cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

Cruise Control rocker switch

10 Instrument cluster 138

11 Steering wheel buttons, right

Displaying menu bar in instrument cluster 138

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation system 53

Selecting menu contents in instrument cluster 138
Changing the station/track, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selecting configuration menus for instrument cluster and Head-up display 138

Using infotainment selection lists in the instrument cluster 148

12 Pitman arm, right

Wipers 134

AUTO

Rain sensor 135

Cleaning the windshield 136

13 Horn, entire surface

14 Steering wheel heating 113

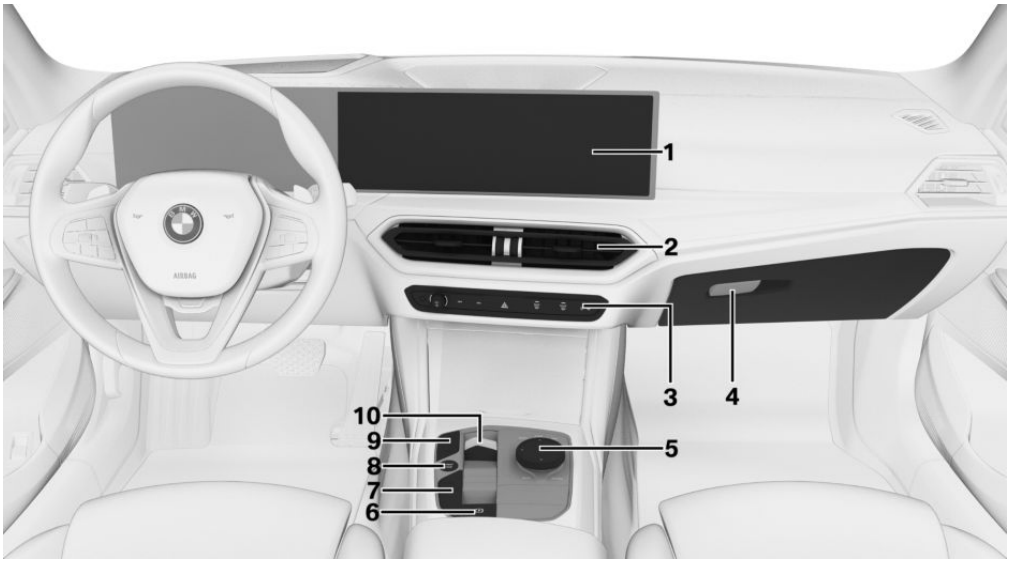
15 Adjusting the steering wheel 113

16 Unlocking the hood 321

17 Opening and closing cargo area 82

18 Fold-out compartment 266

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 48

2 Ventilation 254

3 Hazard warning system 336

Climate control 247

MAX Defrost function 253

REAR Rear window defroster 253

Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

VOL Adjusting the volume

Station/title forward

Station/title back

4 Button for glove compartment 265

5 Controller with buttons 50

6 AUTO H Automatic Hold 132

Parking brake 130

7 SPORT Driving Dynamics Control 129

SPORT drive mode

COMFORT COMFORT drive mode

ECO PRO ECO PRO drive mode

8 START ENGINE STOP Turning drive readiness on/off 121

9 Auto Start/Stop function 121

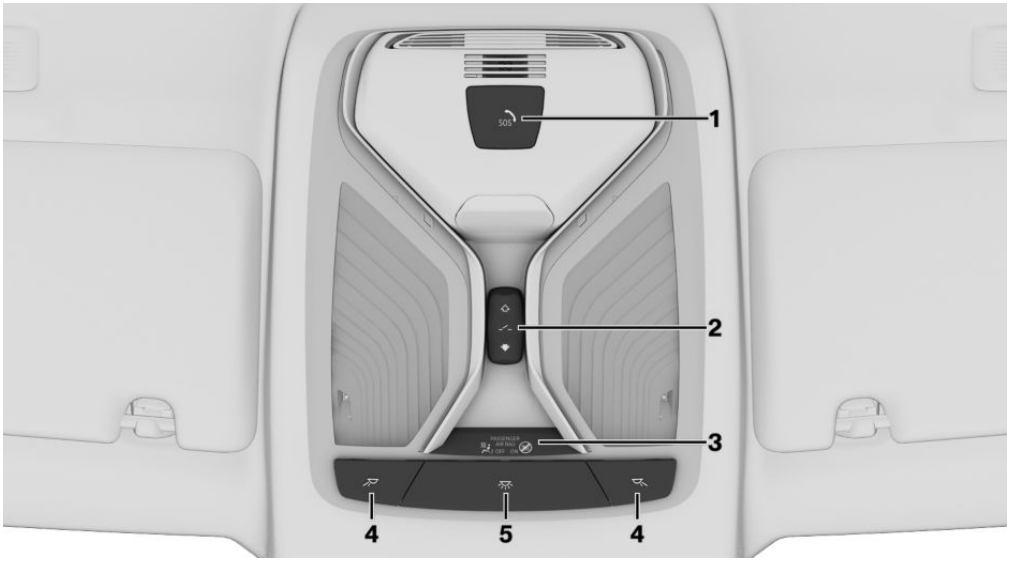
Parking assistance systems 226

Panorama view 232

Dynamic Stability Control 197

10 Selector lever 124

In the vicinity of the headliner



1 Emergency Call, SOS 338

2 Operating the electric glass sun-roof 96

3 Indicator light, front passenger airbag 169

4 Reading lights 165

5 Interior lights 164

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

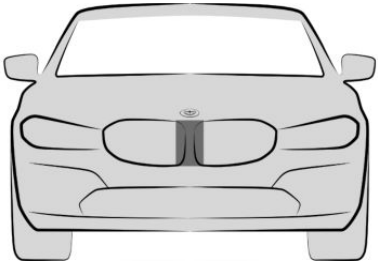
Overview

Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- Front camera.
- Camera behind the windshield.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

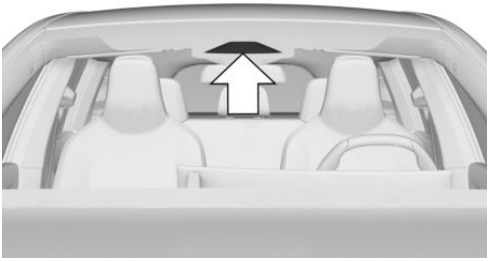
Cameras

Front camera



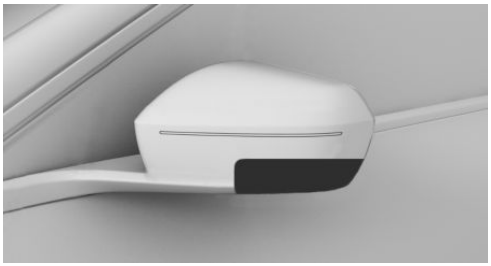
The front camera is located in the radiator grille.

Camera behind the windshield



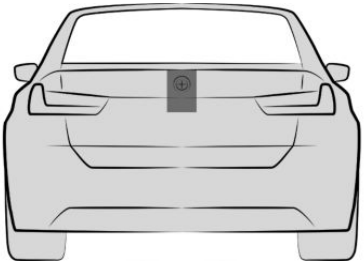
The camera behind the windshield is located near the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



One exterior mirror camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Rearview camera



The rearview camera is located in the handle on the rear end.

Functional requirement of the cameras

The areas of the cameras are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 343.
- ▷ Vehicle care, refer to page 344.

System limits of the cameras

The function of the cameras can be limited or may indicate something wrong, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- ▷ When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- ▷ If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ With open doors or open cargo area.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., because of a setting sun.
- ▷ When it is dark outside.
- ▷ The camera has overheated due to excessive temperatures and temporarily turned off.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

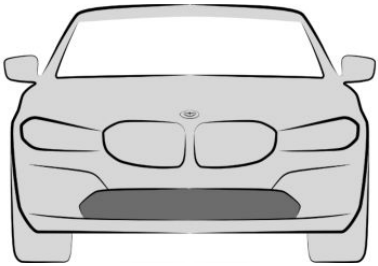
Radar sensors

Safety information

⚠ Warning

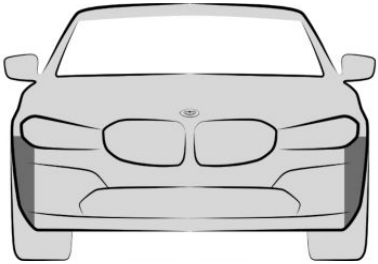
The vehicle radar sensors and thus also the driver assistance systems can be impaired by external influences, e.g., interference. There is a risk of accident. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Front radar sensor



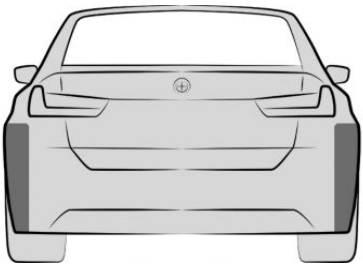
The front radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, front



The radar sensors are located to the side in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, rear



The radar sensors are located on the side in the rear bumper.

Functional requirement of the radar sensors

The areas of the radar sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 343.
- ▷ Vehicle care, refer to page 344.

System limits of the radar sensors

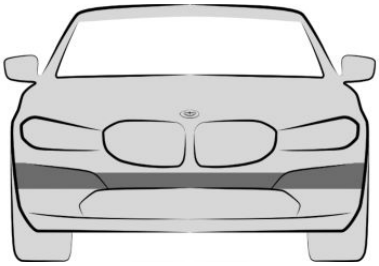
The function of the radar sensors can be limited or not available, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of dirty sensors.
- ▷ In case of iced-up sensors.
- ▷ If sensors are covered, such as by labels, films or a number plate baseplate.
- ▷ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- ▷ If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- ▷ When the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- ▷ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▷ On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

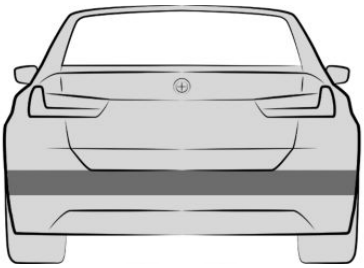
Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors, front



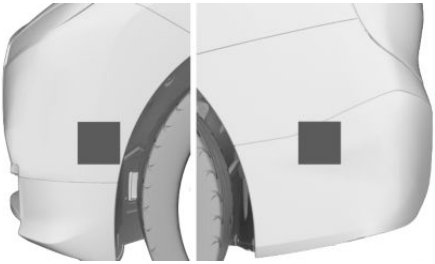
The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the front bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, rear



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the rear bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located on the side in the front and rear bumpers.

Functional requirement of the ultrasonic sensors

The areas of the ultrasonic sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- ▷ Washing the vehicle, refer to page 343.
- ▷ Vehicle care, refer to page 344.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▷ If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers.
- ▷ If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- ▷ After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, for instance jacket.
- ▷ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ In case of external interference with the ultrasonics, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high moisture, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- ▷ With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.

- For objects with a fine surface or objects such as wire mesh fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can be outside of the detection ranges of the sensors.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- In automatic car washes.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

Operating condition of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Idle state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Principle

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠ Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Establishing the sleep mode automatically

The sleep mode is established automatically, such as in the following situations:

- ▷ After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- ▷ If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- ▷ Depending on the configuration via iDrive: one or both front doors will be opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low beams are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

After a trip, the sleep mode can be established by opening the front doors. For this purpose, all passengers must exit the vehicle.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Turn off after opening door"

Establishing the sleep mode manually

To establish idle state in the vehicle after completion of trip:

Press and hold the button on the radio until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Manually setting to standby

General information

Standby can be switched back on after the vehicle is automatically set to idle state.

Via button on the radio

Press the button on the radio. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Via start/stop button

Press the Start/Stop button. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Turning on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

Repeated attempts to start the vehicle or repeated starting of the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Turning on the drive-ready state

General information

Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 149.

Display in the instrument cluster

The activated drive readiness is indicated in the instrument cluster, depending on the equipment, by the display of information required for driving or the READY display.

Turning off drive-ready state

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.

BMW iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Display and operating concept

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the functions can be operated as follows:

- ▷ Via the Control Display.
- ▷ Via the Controller.
- ▷ Via the touchpad.
- ▷ Via the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.
- ▷ Via the operating elements on the steering wheel.

  Instrument cluster, refer to page 138.

Safety information

Warning

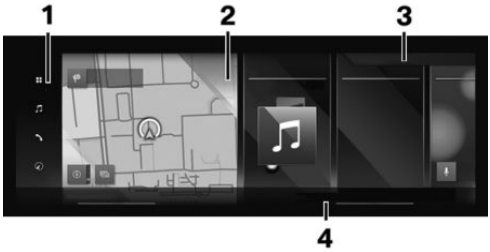
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into different areas.

Overview



1 Menu bar

2 Widgets

3 Status information

4 Climate bar, climate 247

Menu bar

Menu

"MENU": Access to apps and vehicle functions. A filter can be selected. The last selected filter is stored. If necessary, change the filter to see the apps you want.

- ▷ "All apps": All apps and functions are displayed.
- ▷ "Infotainment apps": Only infotainment apps are displayed.
- ▷ "Vehicle apps": Only vehicle adjustment functions are displayed.

Media

"MEDIA": Access to entertainment system functions, e.g., radio stations, or connection with external devices.

Telephone

"TEL": Access to telephone and message function as well as connection and management of mobile devices such as smartphones.

Navigation

"NAV": Access to navigation system, destination entry, and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions, such as points of interest.

Apple CarPlay©

"Apple CarPlay": Depending on national-market version with related function: access to Apple CarPlay. Apple CarPlay enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone via iDrive.

Android Auto©

"Android Auto": Depending on national-market version with related function: access to Android Auto. Android Auto enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Android smartphone via iDrive.

Widgets

Widgets show real-time information and dynamic content such as the navigation map. The widgets also serve as buttons and allow jumping to the relevant menu.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of icons. Depending on the equipment and national-market version, different icons are available.

Telephone status information

Icon	Meaning
	Active call.
	Signal strength.
	SIM card missing.

Entertainment status information

Icon	Meaning
	USB audio.
	Bluetooth audio.
	Smartphone audio.
	Connected Music.
	Time shift.
	Wi-Fi.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.
sxm	Satellite radio is switched on.

Status information for notifications

Icon	Meaning
1	Number of notifications.
	Check Control message.
	Suppress private information.
	Do not disturb.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Other status information

Icon	Meaning
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Activation word active.
	BMW ID or driver profile.
	Destination guidance active.
—	Quick link.
	Wireless charging active.
	Park Distance Control: sound active.
	Park Distance Control: sound deactivated.

Input and display

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be entered using the controller, touchpad, control display, or voice control, depending on vehicle equipment.

Icon	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice control.
OK	Confirm entry.
◀ ▶	Shift the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering data from a database such as contacts, the selection is gradually narrowed down for each character entered, with characters being added as necessary.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Some menu items are preceded by an icon. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

Icon	Meaning
	Function is activated.
	Function is deactivated.

Enabling/disabling audible feedback

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

Quick access

The quick link provides access to shortcuts, certain settings, and app recommendations.

Input	Operation
Show quick link.	Swipe from top to bottom on the control display. Slide the controller up.
Hide quick link.	Swipe from the bottom up on the control display. Slide the controller down.

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

Shortcuts

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the shortcuts and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Storing a function

1. Select the desired function.
2. Press and hold the desired function.
3. "Add to shortcuts"

Shortcuts can only be created with an active BMW ID or a driver profile.

Executing a function

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Tap the desired shortcut.

The function will work immediately. This means for instance that the connection is established when a phone number is selected.

Deleting shortcuts

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut.
3. "Delete shortcut"

BMW Curved Display

Principle

The BMW Curved Display is a single-screen display in the vehicle that is curved towards the driver. The BMW Curved Display comprises the instrument cluster on the driver's side and the Control Display on the center console.

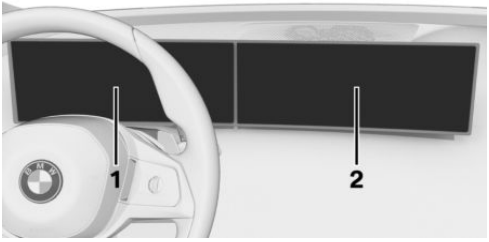
General information

Follow instructions for cleaning the BMW Curved Display in the Care chapter.

Additional information:

Caring for special components, refer to page 346.

Overview



1 Instrument cluster 138

2 Control Display 48

Control Display

Principle

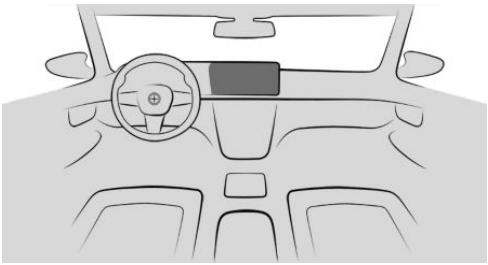
The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can slip and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Overview



Control Display

Switching the control display on/off automatically

The Control Display is turned on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching the control display on/off manually

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. "Screen off"

Tap the control display to turn it on again.

Setting the brightness

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Make the desired setting.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

System limits

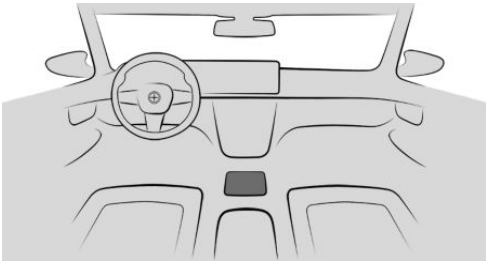
In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning system, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

General information

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly.

Overview



Controller

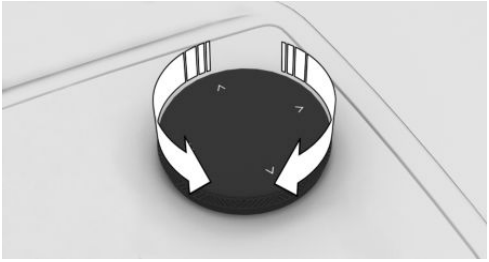
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Call up the main menu.
MEDIA	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
TEL	Go to Phone menu.
MAP	Call up the navigation map.

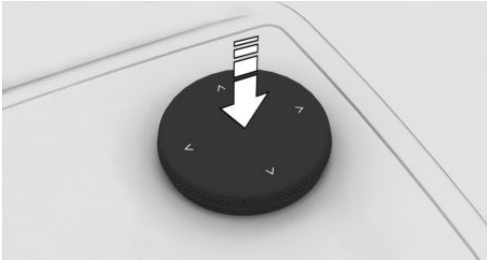
Button	Function
NAV	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Go to previous display range.
OPTION	Call up the Options menu.

Operation

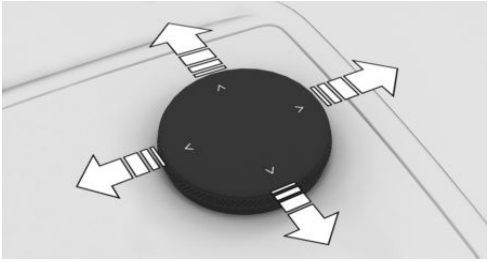
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to change, e.g., between display areas.



Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

HOME Press the button.

The main menu is displayed.

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Selecting a widget

1. Slide the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

Changing between display range

After a menu item has been selected, e.g., "System settings", a new display range will be displayed.

▷ Slide the Controller to the left.

The current display area closes and the previous display range is shown.

▷ BACK Press the button.

The previous display range re-opens.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. OK : confirm entry.

Setting the system language, refer to page 55.

Deleting an entry

Icon	Function
⌫	Press Controller: delete a letter or number.
⌫	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, some iDrive functions can be operated with the controller touchpad.

Selecting functions

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods, so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

  Setting the system language, refer to page 55.

Entering special characters

Function	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Tap the map on the control display and then continue operation using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

Alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries permit a direct jump to letters for which an entry exists.

Enter the first letter on the touchpad.

The first entry of the entered letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via Control Display

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the control display with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the icon.

The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. If necessary, tap the icon.
2. Press and hold the widget.
3. Make the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap on the icon.
     A new widget can be selected.
   - ▷ ✕ Tap on the icon.
     The widget is deleted.
   - ▷ Press and hold the widget and drag to the left or right.
     The widget is moved to the desired position.

Sorting apps

To resort the app icons, press and hold the desired icon and move it to the desired location.

Calling up the context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

Press and hold the desired menu item.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "General help": Go to the Integrated Owner's Manual.
- ▷ "Add to shortcuts": define menu item as shortcut.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. If necessary, tap the icon or Control Display.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting an entry

Icon	Function
⌫	Tap icon: delete a letter or a number.
⌫	Press and hold the icon: delete all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved on the Control Display.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Tap the letter in front of the list.

   A letter box is displayed.
2. Tap the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions. The Personal Assistant simplifies the operation of the vehicle with the automation of processes and habits.

General information

- ▷ BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on national-market version.
- ▷ The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ▷ Say commands at a normal volume. Speaking directly into the microphone does not improve voice recognition.
- ▷ Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ ›...‹ identifies commands that can be spoken.

Functional requirements

- ▷ A language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set via iDrive.

  Setting the system language, refer to page 55.
- ▷ Always say commands in the configured system language.

For the full range of functions, the following functions should be activated, set or booked:

- ▷ Online speech processing, refer to page 56.
- ▷ For all settings under

  Data protection, refer to page 63.
- ▷ Activation word, refer to page 54.
- ▷ BMW ID or a driver profile.
- ▷ Relevant ConnectedDrive services from the ConnectedDrive Store.

Activating the voice control system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice control feature:

- ▷ Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.

  The microphone on the driver's side is active.
- ▷ Speaking the activation word.

  The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side are active with the following voice control, depending on where the activation word was spoken.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence.

Microphone button on steering wheel

1. Press button briefly.
2. Say the command.

Activation word

General information

Saying the activation word will start the Personal Assistant. The Personal Assistant listens.

Preset activation word

The preset activation word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Wake word"
7. ""Hello BMW""

Personal activation word

In addition to the preset activation word, a personal activation word can be set up with an active BMW ID or a driver profile. The personal activation word can also be changed or deleted.

The activation word should consist of multiple syllables to ensure good recognition. An addition such as ›Hello‹ is not necessary.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Set"
9. "Start recording"

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on the national-market version, some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants such as Siri or Amazon Alexa.

To use Siri, the smartphone must be connected via Apple CarPlay.

Supported voice assistants can be used with a connected smartphone in the vehicle. In addition to the preset or personal activation word, the activation word from connected third-party providers can be used.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. Select the desired voice assistant.
6. Select the desired setting.

Canceling voice control

▷ Press the button on the steering wheel again.

▷ ›Cancel‹

▷ Slide the Controller to the right or left.

▷ Press the Controller.

Possible commands

General information

Commands can be used to give instructions or ask questions, with the Personal Assistant providing assistance.

For example, you can call contacts, navigate to an address, apply settings, or ask questions about a vehicle function.

Most content on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g., menu items or list entries.

Help for voice control

- ›Voice commands‹: have possible example commands suggested.
- ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice control announced.
- ›Help‹: have tips and example commands for voice control announced.
- Additional example commands for the current context are displayed in the widget of the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

Sample commands

- ›Call John Smith‹
- ›Drive me to JFK airport‹
- ›Play a classical music station‹
- ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹
- ›Activate the climate control‹
- ›Increase the ACC distance‹

Additional example commands for the current context are displayed in the widget of the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

Additional information:

Adjust widgets, refer to page 52.

Menu items

Say the commands of the menu items as they are selected via the control display.

1. Activate the voice control system.
2. ›Media‹
3. ›Presets‹

   The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Owner's Manual via voice operation

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

The voice activation system and the feedback it provides do not replace the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The function is available depending on the national-market version. The speech recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated?‹

The Personal Assistant returns feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the Control Display.

Settings

Setting the system language

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the response length

You can set the Personal Assistant to use standard dialog or a short version. In case of the short version, the announcements by the Personal Assistant are played back in an abbreviated version.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the Personal Assistant. The function can be disabled if requests are often canceled uninten-

tionally, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there. An active ConnectedDrive contract is required for online voice processing. ConnectedDrive is available depending on the national-market version.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Online speech processing"

Voice control from third-party providers

Depending on vehicle equipment, third-party voice control can be enabled by pressing and holding the microphone button on the steering wheel.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Long press"
6. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the voice guidance until the desired volume is set.

The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

Using the voice activation of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice control.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   The voice activation of the smartphone is activated.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

2. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel to cancel voice control of the smartphone.

Automating routines

General information

The Personal Assistant can automate routines, for instance the automatic opening of windows in the same place. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Activating/deactivating routines

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Automate habits"
4. Select the desired setting.

System limits

- The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle.

  This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.
- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors and windows closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or occupants can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the speech recognition feature.
- A poor data connection influences the response time of the Personal Assistant and the Search.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

Detailed information on the functions and connection types can be found in the following media in the Owner's Manual under the specified keyword:

- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- Printed Owner's Manual for navigation, communication and entertainment.
- Driver's Guide app.
- Driver's Guide Web.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Overview

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The range of functions depends on the vehicle equipment and the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Icon on the control display
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive. Keyword: calling via Bluetooth.	Bluetooth. Keyword: Bluetooth connection.	
Playing music from a mobile device. Keyword: audio.	Bluetooth audio. Keyword: Bluetooth connection.	

Function	Connection type	Icon on the control display
Calling without a mobile phone. Keyword: calling with the Personal eSIM.	Personal eSIM. Keyword: Personal eSIM.	
Data exchange between mobile device and vehicle.	Wi-Fi. Keyword: vehicle WLAN.	
Use Internet access via the personal hotspot.	Wi-Fi via personal hotspot. Keyword: personal hotspot.	
Using Apple CarPlay via iDrive and via voice control. Keyword: Apple CarPlay preparation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi. Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.	
Using Android Auto via iDrive and via voice control. Keyword: Android Auto preparation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi. Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.	
Playing music from a USB device. Keyword: audio.	USB. Keyword: USB connection. Additional information: USB port, refer to page 262.	

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle. This makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Consent to transmit the corresponding data was given in the Data Protection menu.

  Additional information:

  Data protection, refer to page 63.

Search for an upgrade

Functional requirement

Standby must be turned on to search for a Remote Software Upgrade.

Automatic search

The vehicle regularly searches for updates in the background.

Manual search

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Download of an upgrade

Automatic download

If available, the data for a Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle. No download consent is required.

Via BMW app

If an upgrade is available, information about the new software version is displayed in the BMW app.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded to a mobile device, for instance via an existing WLAN connection.

The data can then be transmitted from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

1. Download the upgrade in the BMW app to the smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW app.
3. Establish connection to the vehicle.
   - ▷ iOS: connect Bluetooth audio and WLAN.
   - ▷ Android: connect Bluetooth® audio and WLAN.

   The data transfer of the upgrade from the mobile device to the vehicle occurs in the background only while driving.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been successfully completed, the information about the version can be displayed on the Control Display.

This information is also available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying information

Display in the vehicle:

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. ▷ Display currently installed version: "Installed version:"
   - ▷ Display new available version: "Information on version"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Display in the ConnectedDrive customer portal:

www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Installing the upgrade

General information

- ▷ Installation of the Remote Software Upgrade may result in the deletion of software changes, e.g., performance increases not made by the manufacturer of the vehicle.
- ▷ Modifications to the electrical system of the vehicle, for instance to control units, that have not been made by the vehicle manufacturer can lead to an interruption of the installation.
- ▷ The installation does not occur until the consent was given.

- The installation may take around 20 minutes.
- The installation cannot be terminated.
- The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- The vehicle can be exited during the installation.

Prerequisites for the installation

- The state of charge of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- The outside temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The hazard warning system is turned off.
- The selector lever position P is engaged.
- The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.

If applicable, follow the notes for further prerequisites on the control display.

If the prerequisites are not met, such as a sufficient vehicle battery charge state, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

Pay attention to an offer for installation, e.g., after longer trips.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Cellular network reception must be ensured so that a fault message can be sent to the vehicle manufacturer, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Close the trunk.
- Remove energy consuming devices, such as a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle for the consent for installation.
- Switch off the exterior lighting.
- Remove the devices connected to the diagnostic socket.

Installing immediately

The upgrade can be installed immediately when all prerequisites have been met.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Installing with timer

When the trip is completed, a timer can be used to install the upgrade automatically at a configured time, such as during the night. A later installation may make sense to meet functional requirements, e.g., a sufficiently cooled down engine.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. Select the desired settings.

The installation starts automatically when:

- All prerequisites for the installation have been established correctly.
- All prerequisites continue to be met at the time of installation.

The timer is turned off when the drive-ready state is turned on.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- Hazard warning system.
- Central locking system and, if necessary, Comfort Access.
- Parking lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency call.
- Power windows.
- Glass sunroof.
- Checking the fuel filler flap lock.
- Operate the tailgate or trunk lid.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Booked services such as. Advanced Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services are automatically reactivated during the next trip.

After an extended stationary period, charge the vehicle battery with an extended drive.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the control display or in the BMW app.

If the malfunction cannot be remedied, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or a repair shop.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, such as via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider.

General information

The data transfer can be deactivated for some services. When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations.

This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the following data is deleted:

- ▷ BMW IDs or driver profiles.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored shortcuts.
- ▷ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for instance voice memos.
- ▷ Login accounts.
- ▷ Digital key.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes. In addition, the vehicle is removed from the BMW app and the ConnectedDrive customer portal so that remote functions can no longer be used.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Data can only be deleted while stationary.
- ▷ The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting vehicle data, refer to page 63.

Reset vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is

switched off. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

If setting synchronization has been activated for a BMW ID in the vehicle, personal settings are kept in the BMW Cloud.

BMW ID/driver profiles

Principle

In ConnectedDrive countries, the BMW ID is the personal login for all relevant offers for the BMW brand. The BMW ID can be used in the vehicle to store and activate personal vehicle settings.

In non-ConnectedDrive countries, the personal vehicle settings can be stored in driver profiles.

General information

The BMW ID must be registered once. A BMW ID can be registered via the BMW app, in the ConnectedDrive Portal, or with a service center.

A driver profile is created in the vehicle.

If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can create their own BMW ID or driver profile in order to save their personal settings.

If a BMW ID or driver profile is activated, the settings stored for it are applied in the vehicle.

Many of the settings that are stored for a BMW ID in the vehicle can be synchronized with the BMW Cloud. This makes these settings available in any vehicle where the same BMW ID is used to log in.

The vehicle can store three BMW IDs or three driver profiles.

A BMW ID or driver profile can be activated while unlocking. For this purpose, the driver recognition must be assigned to the BMW ID or the driver profile via a vehicle key or a digital key.

If no BMW ID or driver profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked, the vehicle loads the guest profile.

Functional requirements

When a BMW ID or driver profile is created, changed, deleted, or edited, the vehicle must move no faster than at walking speed.

Logging in the vehicle with a BMW ID and synchronization with the BMW Cloud are only possible when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

Welcome window

After unlocking the vehicle, a Welcome window is shown on the control display. The type of the welcome depends on the following prerequisites:

- ▷ The vehicle does not have a stored BMW ID or driver profile:

  The welcome is neutral. An option to add a BMW ID or create a driver profile is offered.
- ▷ The vehicle key or the digital key has not been assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile:

  The welcome is neutral. The stored BMW IDs or the stored driver profiles are offered for selection. Additionally, it is possible to add a new BMW ID or create a new driver profile.
- ▷ A BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or digital key:

  The welcome is personalized, the stored settings are activated. The BMW ID or the driver profile can be changed.

As soon as the drive-ready state is turned on or the control display is tapped outside of the Welcome window, the welcome will be hidden.

Registering your BMW ID

To use a BMW ID, proceed as follows:

- ▷ Register your BMW ID.
- ▷ Activate your personal ConnectedDrive account.
- ▷ Add or confirm the BMW ID in the vehicle.

Registration of your BMW ID in the vehicle can be started via the BMW app.

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add BMW ID"
3. "Register now"
4. Scan the QR code shown in the display. The BMW ID is created on the smartphone.

Alternatively, the BMW ID can be registered by the service center and added to the vehicle. The BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display in the corresponding vehicle.

Adding the BMW ID

An existing BMW ID can be added to the vehicle:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add BMW ID"
3. ▷ "Log in with My BMW App"
   ▷ "Log in with BMW ID"
4. ▷ Scan the QR code shown on the display. The BMW ID is copied from the BMW app.
   ▷ Enter the access data for the BMW ID.
5. Depending on the national-market version, the following settings can be selected:
   ▷ "Settings from BMW Cloud"
   The settings stored in the BMW Cloud are applied.
   ▷ "Current settings"
   If the vehicle is in the guest profile, the settings of the guest profile will be applied.
   ▷ "Continue"

The vehicle is added to the user's BMW app.

Confirming a BMW ID

If the BMW ID has been created by the service center and added to the vehicle, the BMW ID must then be confirmed in the vehicle:

1. Select the BMW ID.
2. Select the desired confirmation:
   ▷ Scan the displayed QR code with the BMW app.
   ▷ Enter the password for the BMW ID.

BMW app

If a BMW ID has been added to a vehicle, the vehicle is automatically added to the BMW app. This means that BMW app functions can be used for this vehicle. To do so, the BMW app must be used with the same BMW ID.

Alternatively, a vehicle can be added to the BMW app by the service center. In this case, the BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display in the corresponding vehicle.

In rare cases, the use of BMW app functions for this vehicle may be restricted. More information is shown on the control display.

Creating a driver profile

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add driver profile"
3. Enter the name for the driver profile.
4. Select the desired setting:
   "Current settings"
   If the vehicle is in the guest profile, the settings of the guest profile will be applied.

Main user

The main user is the person who first enters their BMW ID into the vehicle and the vehicle into the BMW app. Alternatively, the main user can be defined by the service center.

The main user has access to the following settings, for example:

- ▷ Remove BMW IDs stored in the vehicle.
- ▷ Transfer the role of the main user to another BMW ID.
- ▷ Change vehicle-wide data protection settings.
- ▷ Create the digital master key.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 87.

Specifying driver detection

Driver detection and a PIN can be set up for a BMW ID or a driver profile.

The driver detection offers the following advantages:

- ▷ The BMW ID or the driver profile with saved settings is activated automatically.
- ▷ The settings are not accessible to other persons.

The driver detection is specified immediately following the addition of the BMW ID or after creating the driver profile.

Prior to the selection of the driver detection, a PIN must be created.

- ▷ "Set PIN"

  The PIN can be used to activate the BMW ID or the driver profile, even if the assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key is not available.
- ▷ "Vehicle key"

  The vehicle key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the BMW ID or the driver profile.
- ▷ "Digital Key"

  The digital key that is recognized in the vehicle interior is assigned to the BMW ID or the driver profile.

Automatic driver recognition

If driver recognition has been established, automatic activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is triggered by the following actions:

- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- ▷ By unlocking the vehicle using an external door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned Digital Key must be carried with you.
- ▷ By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned Digital Key must be carried with you. Depending on the country, it may not be possible to recognize the Digital Key.

If there are several vehicle keys or Digital Keys in the vicinity of the vehicle, activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is done according to the following priority:

- ▷ The key that unlocks the vehicle triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.

  The guest profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked using a key that is not assigned to a BMW ID or driver profile.
- ▷ If a vehicle key and a Digital Key are detected at the same time, the Digital Key triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.
- ▷ If another key is detected on the driver's door after activating the BMW ID or the driver profile, the BMW ID or the driver profile of the last key detected is activated.

  If no BMW ID and no driver profile are assigned to this key, the guest profile is activated.

Setting synchronization

If synchronization is switched on, settings from the following areas, for example, are continuously synchronized:

- ▷ BMW ID, e.g., profile picture.
- ▷ Navigation, e.g., recent destinations, home address, or map settings.
- ▷ Media, e.g., favorites or saved radio stations.
- ▷ iDrive, e.g., main menu configuration, language, or units.
- ▷ Personal Assistant, e.g., suggestions or activation word.
- ▷ Exterior lighting, e.g., blinking indicator and home lights.

Settings from the following areas are only synchronized when you log in for the first time:

- ▷ Seating and climate comfort, e.g., driver's seat position or temperature setting.
- ▷ Data protection menu.

Selecting the BMW ID/driver profile

If the BMW ID or driver profile could not be recognized when unlocking the vehicle, select the BMW ID or driver profile on the welcome window.

The BMW ID or driver profile can be changed at any time via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. Select the BMW ID or driver profile.
4. If necessary, enter the PIN.

The BMW ID or the driver profile are activated, the stored settings are loaded.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated and changed by anyone.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- ▷ A BMW ID has not yet been added or a driver profile has not yet been created.
- ▷ No BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply to the guest profile:

- ▷ Selected functions that edit personal data are not available in the guest profile. This includes functions of the navigation and the saving of favorites. More information on data processing is available in the ConnectedDrive data protection notes / service descriptions.
- ▷ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign driver detection to the guest profile.
- ▷ In ConnectedDrive countries, the synchronization with the BMW Cloud is not possible.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. "Continue as guest"

Deleting the BMW ID/driver profile

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. Tap the icon of the desired BMW ID or the desired driver profile.

Removing a BMW ID from the vehicle causes the vehicle to be removed from the BMW app. If the BMW ID has been synchronized with the

BMW Cloud, the data stored in the BMW Cloud is retained after the BMW ID is deleted. If the currently active BMW ID is removed, the guest profile is activated.

Removing a vehicle from the BMW app removes the corresponding BMW ID from the vehicle. If the BMW ID was synchronized with the BMW Cloud, the BMW ID data stored in the BMW Cloud will be retained.

If the vehicle is removed from the main user's BMW app, it will also be removed from the other users' BMW apps. The corresponding BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

If the vehicle is reset to factory settings, the vehicle is removed from all users' BMW apps and all BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key that is assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile can be used to view or change the stored personal settings.

Before a vehicle key is transferred to other persons, any assigned driver detection should be canceled. Changes to the driver detection can be made in the settings of the BMW ID or the driver profile.

The BMW Digital Key provides the option to transfer a digital key to permit other persons the use of your own vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 87.

Settings

General information

Settings added when adding a BMW ID or creating a driver profile can be changed.

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"

The following settings are available for the BMW ID:

- The type of driver detection.
- The profile picture.
- The synchronization with the BMW Cloud.
- The personal salutation.

The following settings are available for the driver profile:

- The type of driver detection.
- The profile picture.
- The profile name.

Selecting a profile picture

The profile picture can be selected from the predefined profile pictures:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"
3. "Manage profile picture"
4. "Select profile picture"

For a BMW ID, the personal profile picture can be taken from the profile in the BMW app. This requires that the synchronization with the BMW Cloud is activated in the settings. After the profile picture from the BMW app has been applied, you can only select from the predefined pictures if the profile picture in the BMW app is deleted or synchronization is deactivated.

System limits

A clear driver detection via the vehicle key or the digital key may not always be possible in the following cases, for example:

- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys with an assigned BMW ID or driver profile are located in the outer area on the driver's side of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle was unlocked from the BMW app.

The use of personal settings that are stored for a BMW ID in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Vehicle key

General information

Two vehicle keys are included in the scope of delivery, each containing an integrated key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for the button functions.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cell batteries can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach of children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell battery has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

Overview

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Remote Engine Start, refer to page 256.
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting, refer to page 161.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

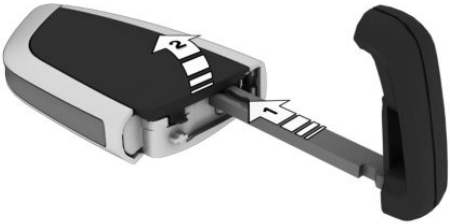
If the lost vehicle key has an assigned BMW ID or driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the BMW ID or driver profile.

Replacing the battery

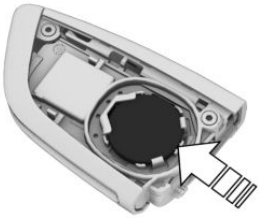
NOTICE

Improper batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the lid with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in arrow direction using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a CR2032 3V battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the lid closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Integrated key

General information

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key will fit in the glove compartment.

Safety information

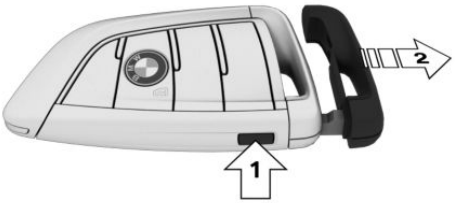
Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

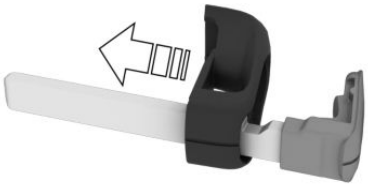
If persons spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

Removing the integrated key

1. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

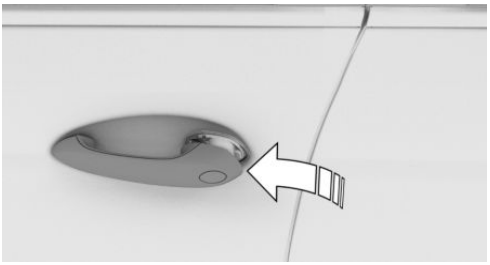


2. Pull off frame from integrated key.



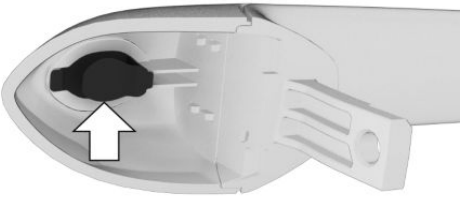
Unlocking/locking via the door lock

1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.

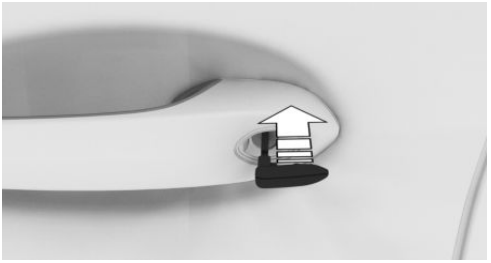


2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover cap and push the cover cap out.

Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover cap from falling out of the door handle.



3. Remove the cover cap.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked using the central locking button or manually from the inside.

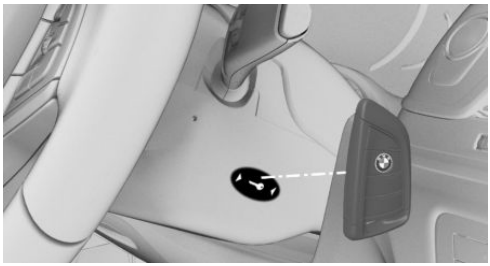
Alarm system

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key via the door lock, the activated alarm system will be triggered when the door is opened.

In this case, use the vehicle key emergency detection to switch off the alarm.

If the vehicle is locked with the integrated key via the door lock, the alarm system will not be activated.

Emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the rear of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. ▷ If the vehicle key is detected:

   Turn on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

   ▷ If the vehicle key is not detected:

   Slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Vehicle key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▷ Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- ▷ Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not carry the vehicle key in close proximity to other electronic devices.
- ▷ Fault of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- ▷ The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key. Use the Emergency detection of the vehicle key to turn on drive readiness.

BMW display key

General information

The Display Key is available with pre-heating.

The Display Key may not be available depending on the country. In this case, independent heating can be operated via the BMW app.

An additional mechanical key is included with the Display Key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet. The mechanical key is used like the integrated key.

The display key supports all functions of the standard vehicle key.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- ▷ Display status of doors and windows.
- ▷ Display status of the alarm system.
- ▷ Display service information.
- ▷ Call up range with available fuel.
- ▷ Operate pre-heating.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 71.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

If persons spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Buttons on the BMW Display Key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock.
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting, refer to page 161.
	Turn the display on/off.
	Micro-USB charging port.
	Back.

Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- When you are in the extended reception range, you can access status information and operate the pre-heating.
- Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.

The icon is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

Display

General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- / Vehicle secured/vehicle unsecured.
- Set time in the vehicle.
- Charge state of the display key battery.

Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

A solid indicator denotes the current page.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate icon.

To return to the original page: tap on the icon beneath the display.

Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range.

- "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Turning on/off

The display will go out automatically after a short time to conserve battery power.

Hiding the display on the display manually: press the button on the left side of the display key.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To turn off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. If necessary, cancel the screen lock.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

To turn the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

Operating concept

The following information shows how to access the information and functions using the main menus.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	/ Door status. Alarm system status. After alarm activation: date, time, and reason for the alarm activation.
	 Window status. Glass sunroof status.
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS. Status of the roadside parking lights.
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel.
"Preconditioning setting"	Operate pre-heating.

Display key battery

General information

Follow the following information:

- ▷ If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- ▷ Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- ▷ The display key can be used while it is being charged via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- ▷ Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging time depends on the charger used.
- ▷ Charging via the USB port may heat up the charger and the display key.

  Charging in the wireless charging tray may heat up the tray and the display key.

  At higher temperatures, the charge current through the display key may be reduced, and in isolated cases the charging process may be interrupted temporarily.
- ▷ When inserting the display key into the wireless charging tray, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging interface to a USB port.

In the center console

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the display key into the middle of the wireless charging tray in front of the cup holders.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The display key is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted display key is fully charged.
Orange	The display key is not charging. Temperature on the display key possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The display key is not charging. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

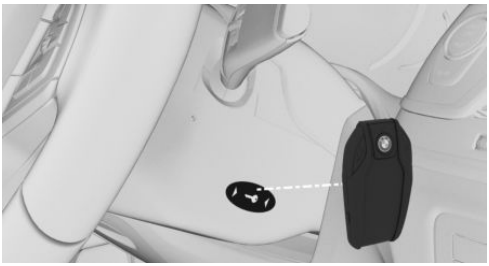
BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the display key is discharged.
- Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
- Fault of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Turning on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the display key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the display key with its rear against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

   Turn on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be turned on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the following buttons on the display key at the same time for at least 10 seconds until the display is switched off and then on again:

▷

▷

⚠ Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Access to vehicle interior

Safety information

⚠ Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

⚠ Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

If persons spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

Actions during unlocking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when unlocking the vehicle:

- ▷ Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- ▷ The unlocking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- ▷ The welcome light can be turned on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▷ If a BMW ID or a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this BMW ID or driver profile will be activated.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment, folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the vehicle interior, they will not be folded out during unlocking.

- Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- The alarm system is switched off.

Additional information:

- Settings, refer to page 91.
- Welcome lights, refer to page 161.
- BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 64.

Actions during locking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when unlocking the vehicle:

- The locking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors can be folded in automatically when locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- Pathway lighting can be activated during locking.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- The alarm system is switched on.

If the drive readiness is still turned on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn will honk twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 91.

With the vehicle key

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

On the external door handle

Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

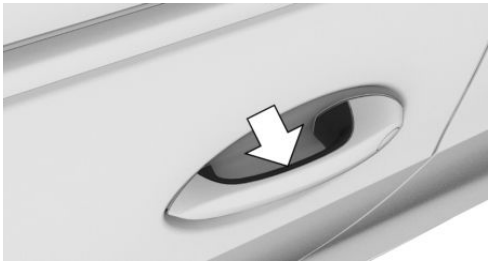
General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Functional requirements

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- After locking, approx. 2 seconds must elapse before unlocking is possible.

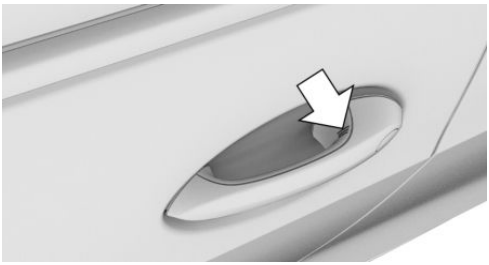
Unlock vehicle



Fully grasp the handle of a door.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.



Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request detection on the external door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Touchless unlocking/locking of the vehicle

Principle

When the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is unlocked.

When the driver walks away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle will be locked.

General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m around the side and rear of the vehicle.

The vehicle will be locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 9 ft/3 m around the side and rear of the vehicle.

If the vehicle key is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If a passenger is detected in the front passenger seat during locking and the seat belt of the front passenger is engaged in the seat belt buckle during locking:

- ▷ The vehicle will be locked but not secured against theft.
- ▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Actions during unlocking

If the settings specify that only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked, note the following:

The driver's door and fuel filler flap will only be unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 91.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- ▷ Unlocking: when entering the unlocking zone, the doors and cargo area must be closed.
- ▷ Locking: when leaving the locking zone, the doors and cargo area must be closed.
- ▷ Automatic unlocking and locking must be activated in the settings.
- ▷ The drive-ready state must be turned off.
- ▷ For contactless locking of the vehicle, no second vehicle key may be within a radius of 18 ft/6 m around the vehicle.
- ▷ If the vehicle has been in the idle state for several days, contactless unlocking/locking will only be available after the vehicle has been driven.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 91.

With the Key Card

Principle

The Key Card is a chip card on which the digital key is installed. It can be used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

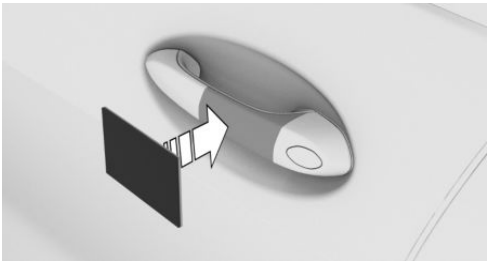
Additional information:

Key Card, refer to page 85.

General information

The Key Card is available with Comfort Access.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold activated Key Card directly on the center of the external door handle of the driver's door.

When locking the vehicle with the Key Card, make sure that all doors and the trunk are closed.

If the Key Card is not detected, slightly change the position of the Key Card and repeat the procedure.

With the BMW Digital Key

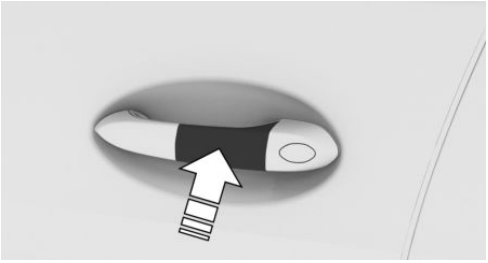
Principle

Depending on the national-market version and equipment, a digital key can be installed on a compatible smartphone and used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 87.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the near field communication antenna of the smartphone directly and centered on the external door handle of the driver's door. The

position of the near field communication antenna depends on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors and the trunk are closed.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle, despite accidentally locking in the vehicle key?

- The Remote Services of the BMW app include the option to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

Access to the cargo area

General information

It may not be possible to open the cargo area when the vehicle is in valet parking mode.

Additional information:

Valet parking mode, refer to page 90.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the following settings can be changed:

- Whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the vehicle key.
- Whether the vehicle must be unlocked before unlocking with the vehicle key.

Opening the trunk

Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

On the trunk

General information

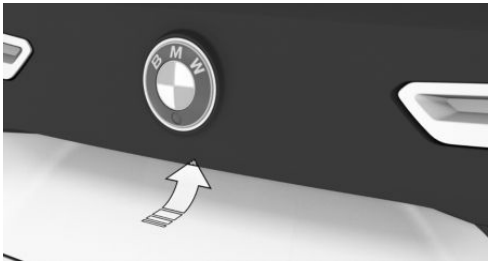
With Comfort Access, the cargo area can be accessed without activating the vehicle key.

The key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.

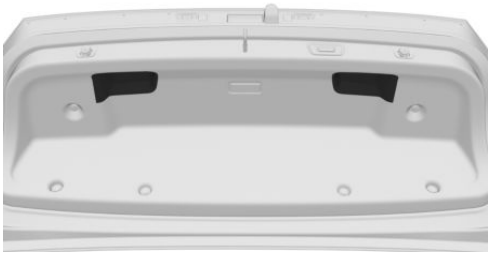
Opening the trunk



- ▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the trunk.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the trunk.

  Locked doors are not unlocked.

Closing the cargo area manually



Pull down the cargo area using the recessed grips.

Depending on the equipment: press the button on the cargo area.

The vehicle is locked after closing the cargo area. To do so, the driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the cargo area.

Closing the cargo area automatically

- ▷ Press the button on the trunk.
- ▷ Press the button on the trunk.

  The vehicle is locked after closing the cargo area. To do so, the driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the cargo area.

In the interior

Functional requirements

When the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged before the trunk lid can be opened using the button in the vehicle interior.

Opening the trunk

Press the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

Closing the cargo area

Depending on the equipment:

Pull and hold the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

The vehicle key or the digital key must be located in the vehicle interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the trunk is closed.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- When the vehicle starts moving.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key.

  Pressing the button again continues the opening process.
- By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening procedure.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- If the vehicle drives off with a jerky movement.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area

Principle

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area is possible when carrying the vehicle key on your person.

Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot movement in the central rear area and the cargo area is opened and closed.

General information

The availability of the function depends on the equipment and the country.

If the vehicle key is within the sensor range, the cargo area may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear area.

If contactless opening is used for the cargo area, the locked doors will not be unlocked.

Safety information

Warning

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Functional requirements

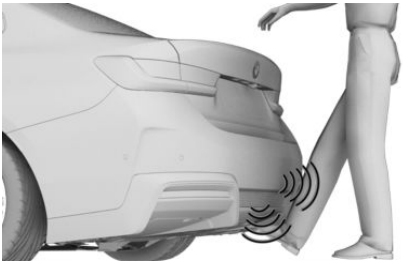
- To open the cargo area contactlessly, selector lever position P must be engaged.
- Contactless opening and closing of the trunk must be activated in the settings.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 91.

Opening the cargo area

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the driving direction and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Before the cargo area opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving a foot again will stop the opening procedure. The subsequent foot movement will close the cargo area again.

Closing the cargo area

Perform the foot movement for opening the cargo area.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving a foot again will stop the closing process. The subsequent foot movement will open the cargo area again.

System limits

The detection of the foot movement may be limited due to the following external conditions:

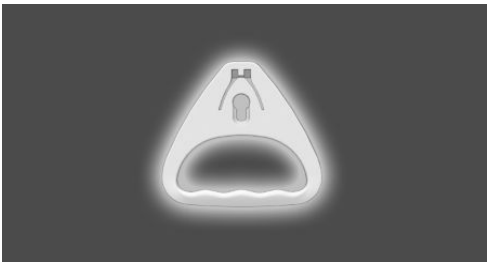
- Ice, snow or slush on the rear of the vehicle.
- Dirt or road salt on the rear of the vehicle.

Movement in range of the sensors may cause unintended opening of the cargo area, for instance due to water running down when cleaning the vehicle or with heavy rainfall. To prevent such unintended opening of the cargo area in such cases, keep the vehicle key at a sufficient distance from the rear of the vehicle.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked trunk manually with a slow and smooth motion.

Trunk emergency unlocking



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The trunk is unlocked.

Key Card

Principle

The Key Card allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started.

General information

The availability of the Key Card depends on the equipment and the country.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the Key Card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

Before leaving the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card or take the Key Card with you because the active Key Card can be used to start the vehicle. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card could become damaged. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not place the Key Card in the wireless charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

Activating/deactivating Key Card in the vehicle

General information

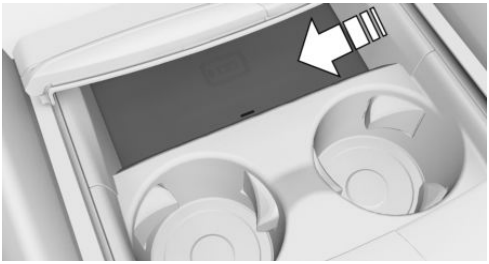
The Key Card must be located in the smartphone tray and a vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to activate the Key Card.

A vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to deactivate the Key Card.

When the BMW Digital Key is activated for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

Activating Key Card



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Follow instructions on the control display.

Deactivating Key Card

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Key Card"
5. "Deactivate Key Card"

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

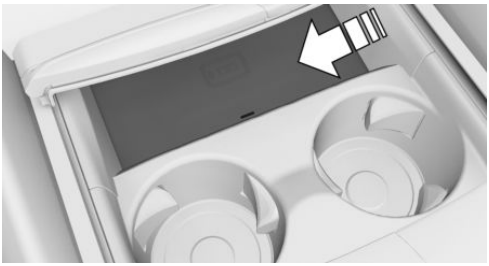
Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked with the activated Key Card.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 78.

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place activated Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

After drive readiness is switched on, the Key Card can be removed from the tray.

Malfunction

The detection of the Key Card by the vehicle may be disrupted by objects between the sensors and the Key Card, such as a wallet or a smartphone cover.

BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started, with a compatible smartphone.

General information

Availability and range of functions of the BMW Digital Key depend on the equipment and national-market version.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible mobile devices.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. The BMW app provides a check to determine if the smartphone and the vehicle are compatible and which functions are supported.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone as a Digital Key, always carry a vehicle key or the activated Key Card with you. This ensures access to the vehicle, even in the event of a smartphone failure. It is also helpful to have the vehicle key or Key Card with you if the vehicle needs to be handed over to another person. You can then hand over the vehicle key or the Key Card instead of your smartphone. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Additional information:

- ▷ BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 64.
- ▷ www.bmw.com/digitalkey.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key
- ▷ The vehicle is linked with the ConnectedDrive account of the vehicle owner.
- ▷ The rechargeable battery of the smartphone has a sufficient charge. The necessary minimum charge of the rechargeable battery depends on the smartphone.

Enabling the digital remote control key

Vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as a digital remote control key in the vehicle. The vehicle owner must prove his authorization for the vehicle for this purpose.

Proof of authorization can be started via the BMW app or via the activation code in the corresponding smartphone function, e.g. in the Wallet app. Both vehicle keys must be in the vehicle during activation.

Follow the instructions in the Digital Key menu in the BMW app or on the Control Display.

Sharing digital keys

General information

Digital key allows the sharing of digital keys with other people. This option is available via the smartphone that is enabled as digital remote control key. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

Forwarding authorization

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for instance in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will receive an invitation. When the invitation is accepted, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

Limiting the range of functions

Certain functions of the digital key can be limited before handing it over. For instance, if the Digital Key is passed on to a novice driver, the switch-off for driving stability control systems can be disabled and the engine power can be reduced. For more information, refer to the ConnectedDrive portal and the BMW app.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, an authentication may be required for security and safety reasons.

An authorized vehicle key, the digital remote control key or another method may be used for authentication. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the Control Display.

Deleting digital keys

General information

Deleted digital keys will be removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deleting the digital master key

The digital master key can be deleted from the smartphone or via iDrive.

The deletion of the digital master key is completed immediately.

Deleting a shared key

Shared keys can be deleted via the smartphone with the digital remote control key, via the smartphone with a shared key or via iDrive.

The deletion via the smartphone using the digital remote control will not be performed until the vehicle is used with a key other than the key to be deleted.

The deletion via the smartphone with a shared key or via iDrive is executed immediately.

Deletion via iDrive

To be able to delete a digital key via iDrive, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle or the remote control key must be located in the smartphone tray.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. If necessary, select the digital key.
6. Delete the Digital Key.

Resetting the function

To reset the BMW Digital Key function, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

When resetting the BMW Digital Key function, all digital keys including the digital main key will be deleted. The Key Card digital key is not deleted.

After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The digital remote control key must be enabled again to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

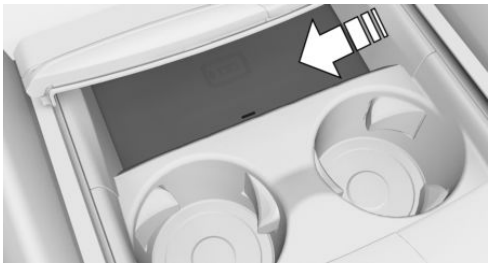
The vehicle can be unlocked and locked using the external door handle.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 78.

Turning on the drive-ready state

Using the smartphone tray



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place smartphone in the center of the smartphone tray.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the cover of the smartphone tray.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to turn on the drive-ready state.

Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Sale of the vehicle

Prior to selling a vehicle, reset the Digital Key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

When the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted. The Key Card digital key is not deleted.

System limits

The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the alarm system cannot be switched off with a digital key.

Additional information:

Alarm system, refer to page 92.

Malfunction

Digital key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- Objects such as a chip card or the Key Card are located between the smartphone and the smartphone cover.
- Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the smartphone due to buildings or metal objects.

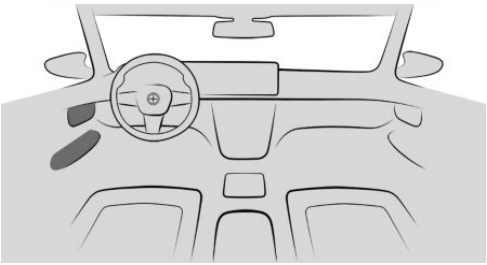
Buttons for the central locking system

General information

The vehicle is automatically locked when driving off.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front door.

Lock.

Unlock.

Locking the vehicle

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button.

Opening the door

- Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Valet parking mode

Principle

In the valet parking mode, the Control Display is disabled.

E.g., this mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over for valet parking.

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the valet parking mode may not be available.

In the valet parking mode, it is not possible to change vehicle settings via iDrive. Settings stored in a BMW ID or a guest profile cannot be changed. Personal data cannot be displayed.

Additionally, the following actions are carried out:

- The volume of the audio system is limited.
- The Dynamic Stability Control cannot be turned off.
- The availability of certain settings of the driving modes is limited.

Additional information:

BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 64.

Functional requirement

The driver has registered in the vehicle with a BMW ID.

Activating the valet parking mode

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"

   The cargo area is locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
5. If necessary, "PIN"

   If the active BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN, this PIN must be set now. The

PIN is needed to deactivate the valet parking mode.

6. If necessary, enter the PIN.
7. "Activate valet parking mode"

Deactivating valet parking mode

1. Select the desired BMW ID on the lock screen.
2. ▷ Enter the assigned PIN for the BMW ID.

   If you have forgotten the PIN: enter the access data for the BMW ID.

   ▷ If the selected BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN: enter the access data for the BMW ID.

Settings

General information

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Unlock"
6. Select the desired setting:

   ▷ "Driver's door only"

   Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

   ▷ "All doors"

   The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Touchless unlocking/locking

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Comfort access"
5. Select the desired setting:

   ▷ "Unlock when approaching"

   ▷ "Lock when walking away"

Automatic unlocking

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:

   ▷ "Unlock doors at end of trip"

   ▷ "Unlock doors when in P"

   After drive readiness is switched off, the locked vehicle is unlocked automatically by pressing the start/stop button or engaging selector lever position P.

Automatic locking

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Lock after a short time"

   The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:

- "Flash on lock/unlock"

  Unlocking is signaled by blinking twice, locking by blinking once.
- With alarm system:

  "Sound on lock/unlock"

  Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Fold mirrors on lock/unlock"

Cargo area

Cargo area and doors

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Tailgate"

     Depending on the equipment, the cargo area will be unlocked or opened.
   - "Tailgate and door(s)"

     Depending on the equipment, the trunk will be unlocked or opened and the doors are unlocked.
   - "Tailgate will only open if vehicle is already unlocked"

     The vehicle must be unlocked before the cargo area can be operated with the vehicle key.
   - "Lock tailgate button"

     Operating the cargo area with the vehicle key is disabled.

Opening/closing the cargo area with no-touch activation

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Open with foot movement"
   - "Close with foot movement"

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system issues a visual and acoustic signal when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle incorrectly.

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood, or the cargo area.
- Movements in the interior.
- Changes in the vehicle inclination, such as during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD on-board diagnostics.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the diagnostic socket.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Optical alarm:

  By blinking of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Turning the alarm system on/off

The alarm system is turned off or on as soon as the vehicle is unlocked or locked.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the cargo area with the alarm system switched on

The cargo area can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After closing the cargo area, the cargo area will be locked and monitored again. The hazard warning system blinks once during closing.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- ▷ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the remaining open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be turned on.
- ▷ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been deployed.

Tilt alarm sensor

The inclination of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The vehicle interior is monitored.

The alarm system responds when movement is detected in the vehicle interior.

The windows must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ In duplex garages.
- ▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▷ With animals in the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked after start of refueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Ending the alarm

Unlock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key, the drive readiness must subsequently be turned on via the emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Window

General information

When a window is frequently opened to the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For instance when the same parking garage is frequently used.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 53.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening windows

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing the windows

With Comfort Access: press and hold the button on the vehicle key after locking.

The windows close for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

On the external door handle

Principle

The windows can be closed using the external door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

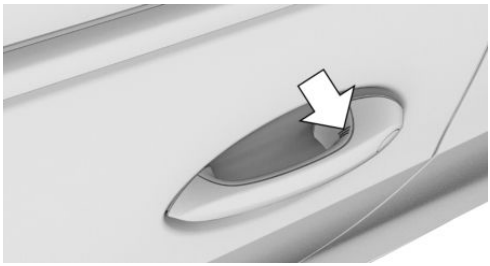
General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.

Closing the windows



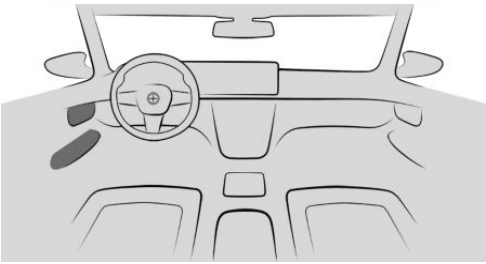
Touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

In the interior

Overview



Power windows

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key or a digital key must be inside of the vehicle.

Opening windows

- ▷ Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing the windows

- ▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window closes automatically. Pulling again stops the motion.

Jam protection system

Principle

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing will be interrupted.

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

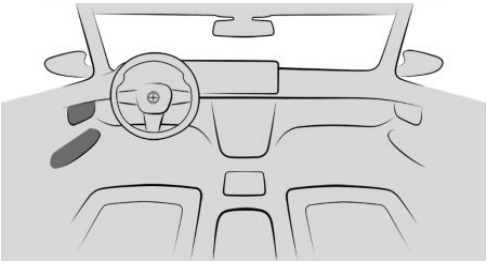
Safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance, from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Overview



Safety switch

Turning the safety functions on/off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Glass sunroof

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening glass sunroof

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing glass sunroof

With Comfort Access: press and hold the button on the vehicle key in close range of the vehicle after locking.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

On the external door handle

Principle

The glass sunroof can be closed using the external door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

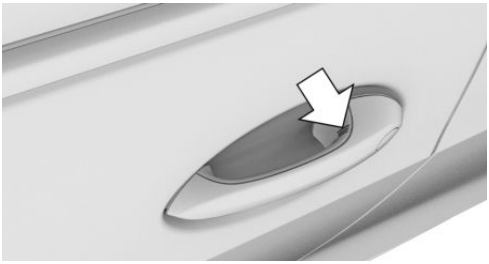
General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.

Closing glass sunroof



Touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

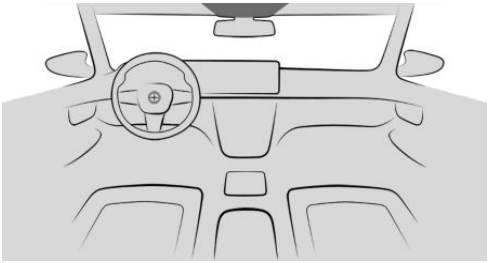
In the interior

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Opening/closing the glass sunroof/sun protection.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

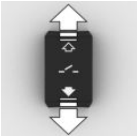
Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

- ▷ The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- ▷ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

- ▷ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

- ▷ Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

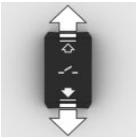
  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- ▷ Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



- ▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection open together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- ▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection close together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch in the vehicle interior again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Jam protection system

Principle

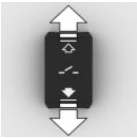
The jam protection prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

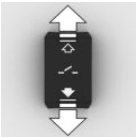


1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power interruption during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- ▷ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.
- ▷ The drive-ready state is established.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- ▷ If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- ▷ If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and the sun protection have opened then closed again.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

▷ Seats, refer to page 101.
▷ Seat belts, refer to page 105.
▷ Head restraints, refer to page 107.
▷ Airbags, refer to page 167.

Seats

Safety information

Warning

Seat setting while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the seat belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Manually adjustable seats

Overview

The levers for setting the seats are located on the front seats.

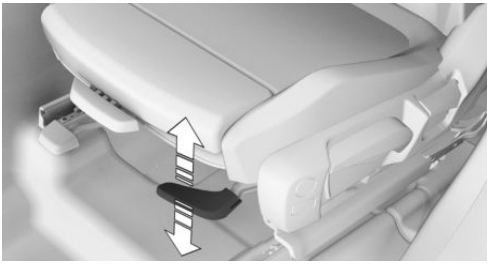
Setting the longitudinal direction

Warning

Unexpected movements of the seat while driving may occur if the seat is unlocked. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. After adjusting, move the seat forward or back slightly, making sure the seat engages properly.

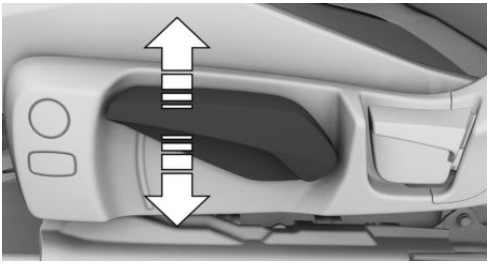
Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

Adjusting seat tilt



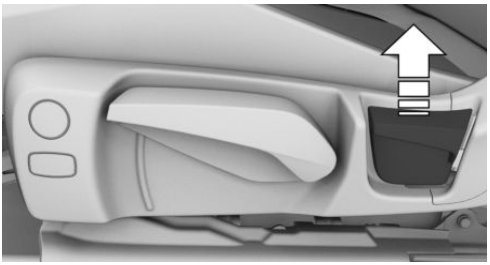
Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed until the seat has reached the desired inclination.

Adjusting the height



Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed until the seat has reached the desired height.

Adjusting backrest tilt



Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Electrically adjustable seats

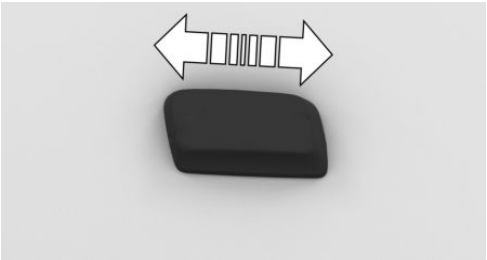
General information

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview

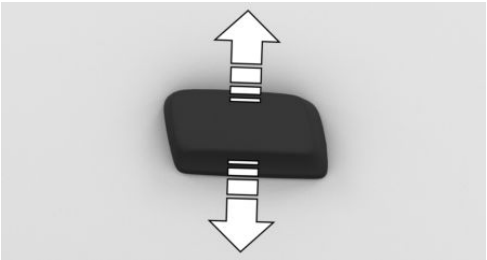
The switches for setting the seats are located on the front seats.

Setting the longitudinal direction



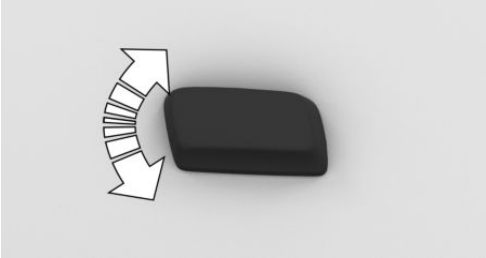
Press switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the height



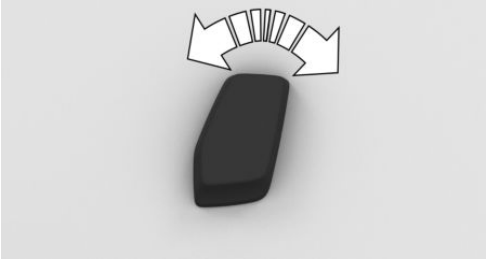
Press switch up or down.

Adjusting seat tilt



Tilt switch up or down.

Adjusting backrest tilt



Tilt switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the seat position automatically

General information

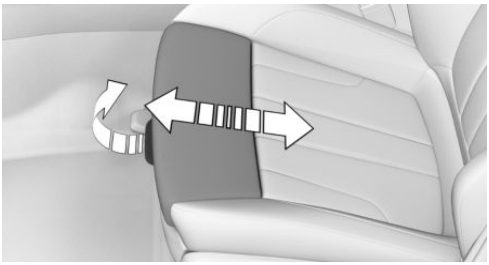
The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the saved position will be called up automatically.

Activate/deactivate the function

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select driver's seat.
5. Select the desired setting.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright sitting position.

Adjusting the lumbar support

▷ Press the front/rear section of the button:

The curvature is increased/decreased.

▷ Press the upper/lower section of the button:

The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

Principle

Adjusting the backrest width may improve side support when cornering.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting the backrest width

▷ Press the front section of the button:

The backrest width decreases.

▷ Press the rear section of the button:

The backrest width increases.

Calibrating the front seats

General information

As soon as the electric seat setting no longer functions precisely, a Check Control message is displayed on the control display.

To restore the accuracy of the electric seat setting, the front seats must be calibrated.

Safety information

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Calibrating the front seat

1. Press the longitudinal direction switch forward until the seat stops.
2. Press the switch forward again until the seat stops.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

As soon as the message on the control display disappears, the calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

If the message is still shown after repeated calibration, have the system checked by a qualified authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Seat belts

General information

The vehicle is fitted with five seat belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that seat belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags do not replace seat belts.

All seat belt anchorage points are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect for the seat belts when used properly and with the correct seat settings.

The two outer seat belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center seat belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Additional information:

Notes on sitting safely, refer to page 101.

Safety information

Warning

Use of a seat belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the seat belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.
Do not strap in more than one person per single seat belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing seat belts correctly.

Warning

With a rear seat backrest that is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. If you are using the middle seat belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ The seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Seat belt tensioners or roll-up mechanism were modified.

Seat belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not modify seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, roll-up mechanisms, or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the seat belts checked after an accident at the authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

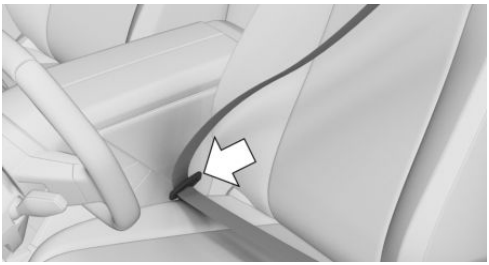
Correct use of seat belts

- ▷ Wear the seat belt tight to your body over your lap and shoulders, without twisting it.
- ▷ Wear the seat belt deep on your hips over your lap. The seat belt must not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not rub the seat belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.

- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the seat belt frequently upward around your upper body area.

Buckling the seat belt

1. Guide the seat belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the buckle tongue into the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must engage audibly.



When the seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

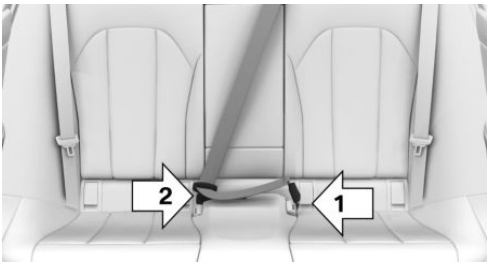
To ease accessibility to the seat belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

Unbuckling the seat belt

1. Hold down the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the seat belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Middle seat belt in the rear

Buckling the seat belt

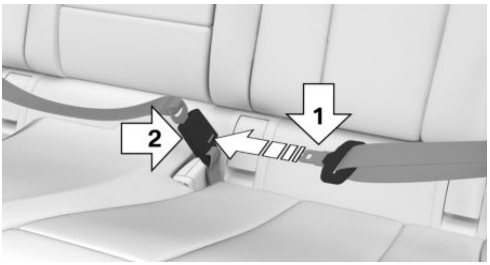


1. Pull the buckle tongues out of the mounts in the roof.
2. Insert the lower buckle tongue in the belt lock, arrow 1.
3. Insert the upper buckle tongue in the seat belt buckle, arrow 2.

   The seat belt buckles must engage audibly.

Unbuckling the seat belt

1. Hold down the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Open the belt lock, arrow 2, with the buckle tongue, arrow 1.



4. Guide the seat belt to the fixture on the rear shelf.

Seat belt reminder

General information

Make sure that the seat belts are positioned correctly.

The seat belt reminder becomes active in the following situations:

- When the seat belt on the driver's side or on the passenger's side is not fastened.
- When the seat belt is unfastened while driving.
- When objects are lying on a seat.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after turning on the drive-ready state when the seat belt reminder is active.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Icon	Meaning
	Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.
	Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.
	Seat belt is buckled on the corresponding seat.
	Seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding seat.

Rear seat reminder system

Principle

At the end of a trip, the system informs the driver of the possible presence of occupants on the rear seats.

General information

If a door with access to the rear row seating is operated within 30 minutes before starting off, a message appears on the control display when the trip is completed and a signal tone sounds.

If the trip is continued within 30 minutes, the message is displayed again after the trip has been completed.

Activate/deactivate the function

1. "MENU"
2. "System settings"
3. Rear seat reminder system
4. Select the desired setting.

Safety mode

In critical driving situations, for instance during emergency braking, the front seat belts tighten automatically.

If the driving situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the seat belt using the red button in the seat belt buckle. Fasten the seat belt before continuing to drive.

Front head restraints

Safety information

Warning

Removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

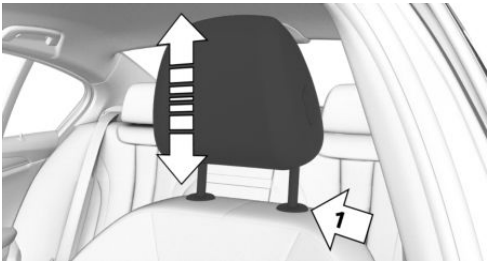
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

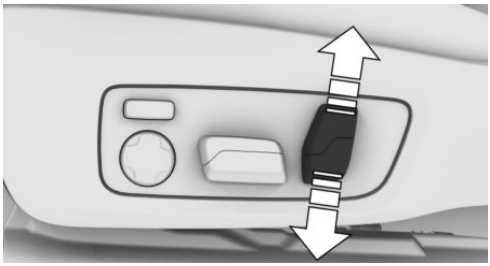
Adjusting the height



- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

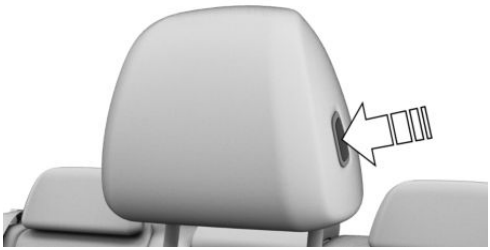
After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: M sport seat



Press switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance



- ▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

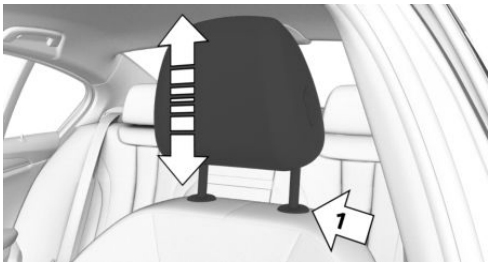
Adjusting the distance: M Sport seat

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing the head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Removing the head restraints: M Sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Installing head restraints

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

Removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

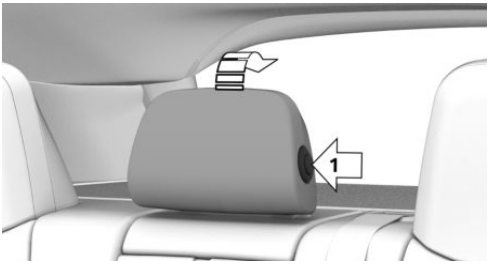
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the head restraints

General information

To improve the view to the rear, the head restraints can be folded back. Only fold the head restraint back if no one will be sitting in the corresponding seat.

Folding down the head restraints



- ▷ To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- ▷ Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height

The height of the head restraints can be adjusted.

- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

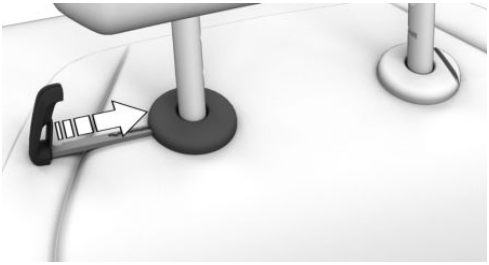
Removing the outer head restraint

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

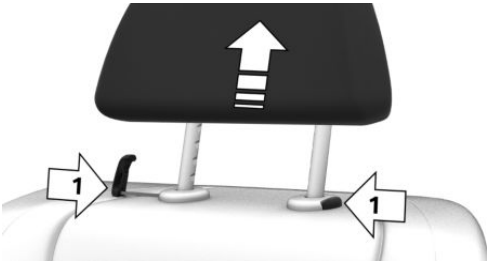
1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.

   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 272.
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Insert the integrated key.

   Integrated key, refer to page 70.



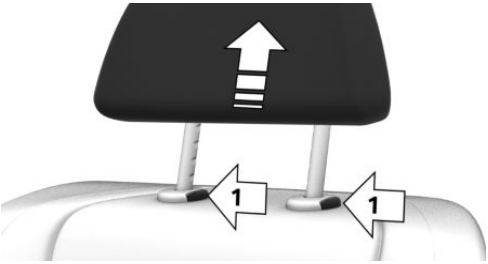
4. Press and hold the integrated key and the button at the same time, arrows 1, and pull out the head restraint completely.



Removing the center head restraint

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the center seat.

1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the buttons, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.



Installing head restraints

For installation, insert the head restraints in the mounts and slide them down until you feel resistance.

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The front passenger's side exterior mirror is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The exterior mirror adjustment is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current exterior mirror adjustment can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the road users behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirror in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Press the button.

The selected exterior mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting the exterior mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the exterior mirror by pressing on the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in/folding out the exterior mirrors

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in car washes. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ On narrow roads.

Exterior mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor

Principle

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger's side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

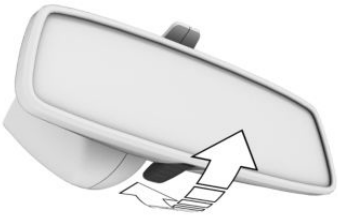
Activating the Automatic Curb Monitor

1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating the Automatic Curb Monitor

Slide the switch to the front passenger's side exterior mirror position.

Interior mirror, manually dimmable



To reduce the blinding glare of the interior mirror, flip the lever forward.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the rear of the mirror.

Overview

Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

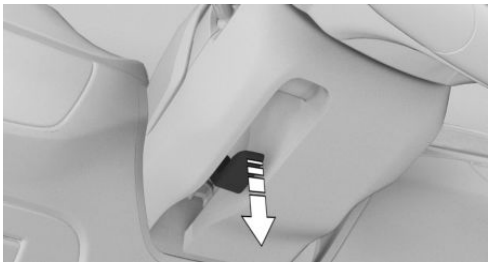
Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down completely.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Steering wheel heating

Overview

Button for steering wheel heating

Turning the steering wheel heating on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the steering wheel heating turns on automatically if the function was turned on at the completion of the last trip.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Depending on the equipment: height of the Head-up display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- ▷ Backrest width.
- ▷ Lumbar support.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a seat setting switch or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

Seat climate control

Various climate control functions are available for the seats.

Additional information:

Climate operation, refer to page 247.

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A hot vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

Safety information

Warning

The seat belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Secure children

shorter than 5 ft/150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 169.

Safety information

Warning

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If a child restraint system and its fastening system has been damaged or exposed to an accident, have these systems checked and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating the airbags

Warning

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 169.

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

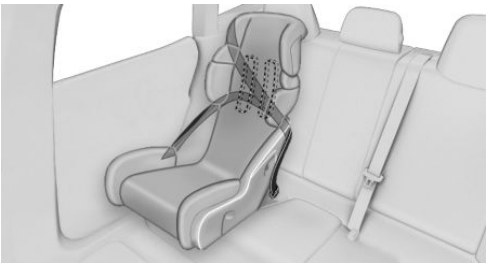
After mounting a universal child restraint system, adjust the tilt of the seat backrest so that the belt is not constrained.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child restraint seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: Before installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security



The seat belts in the rear and the front passenger seat belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the seat belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the seat belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The seat belt is disabled.

Unlocking the seat belt

1. Unbuckle the seat belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications, operating tips and safety instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for lower anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

Warning

If the lower mountings of the child restraint system are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the lower mountings are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest.

Warning

The mounts for the lower mountings and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower mountings or attachment points.

Position

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower mountings are marked with a pair (2) of LATCH icons. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower mountings of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

Before attaching child restraint systems

Pull the seat belt away from the area of the child seat mountings.

Installing child restraint systems

1. Mount child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Make sure that the child restraint system mount is correctly engaged in the lower anchor on both sides.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

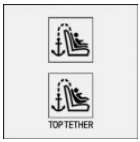
Warning

If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or nonexistant. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear seat backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

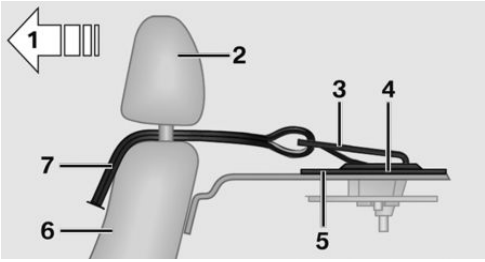
Warning

The mounts for the lower mountings and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower mountings or attachment points.

Attachment points for upper retaining strap

Icon	Meaning
	The respective icon shows the attachment point for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this icon. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Driving direction
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Attachment point
5 Rear shelf
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Open the attachment point cover.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports or along both sides of the head restraint to the attachment point.

   For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the attachment point where applicable.

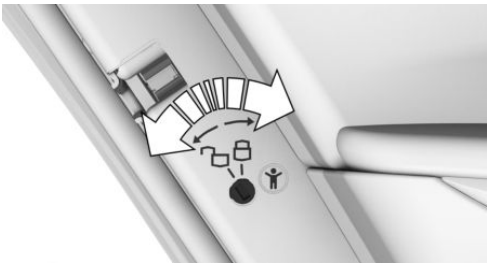
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors

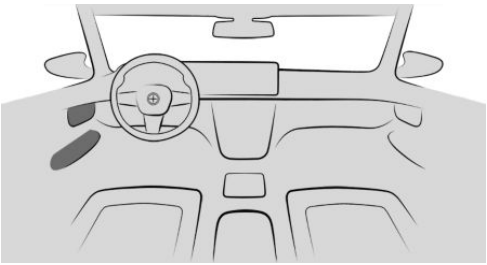


Unlock or lock the safety switch on the rear doors with the integrated key.

Icon	Function
	Child safety latch is unlocked.
	Child safety latch is locked.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for rear



Press the button on the driver's door.

Various functions are locked and cannot be operated in the rear such as the power windows.

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Start/Stop button

Principle

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

General information

Drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

▷ Drive-ready state, refer to page 43.

▷ Standby state, refer to page 43.

Driving off

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Apply gear position.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Driving off.

Auto Start/Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready.

Without mild-hybrid technology: the function is activated below speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

With mild-hybrid technology: the function is activated below speeds of approx. 10 mph/15 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

The engine is switched off automatically when stopping under the following conditions:

▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.

▷ Without mild hybrid technology:

The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.

▷ The driver's seat belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- ▷ Depress the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioning system when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Display in the instrument cluster

The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of a steep downhill grade.
- ▷ The brake pedal was not pressed hard enough.
- ▷ When the ambient temperature is high and automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle interior has not yet been heated or cooled as desired.
- ▷ When window condensation is possible and automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ Engine or other parts are not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Engine cooling is required.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ Hood is unlocked.
- ▷ The Automatic Parking Assistant is activated.
- ▷ For stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever in position N, S, or R.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Using fuel with high ethanol content.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

Accelerating as usual after starting the engine.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- ▷ Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ With excessive warming of the interior when cooling is turned on.
- ▷ With excessive cooling of the interior when heating is turned on.

- When window condensation is possible and automatic climate control is switched on.
- Without mild hybrid technology:

  In case of a steering operation.
- When changing selector lever position from D or P.
- In case of seriously discharged vehicle battery.
- When starting an oil level measurement.

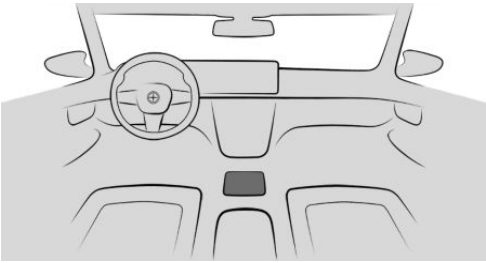
Deactivating the system manually

Principle

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Without mild hybrid technology: via button



Press the button.

- LED comes on: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED off: Auto Start/Stop function is enabled.

Without mild hybrid technology: via iDrive

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "Auto Start/Stop"
6. Select the desired setting.

Via selector lever position

The Auto Start/Stop function is also disabled in selector lever position S.

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in SPORT driving mode of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

If the engine stops automatically, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example to leave it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - Standby state is switched on.
   - Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. You may continue driving. Have the system checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Steptronic transmission

Principle

The Steptronic transmission is the vehicle's automatic transmission. With shift paddles, it offers the option of manual shifting if needed.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away, e.g. by applying the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Gear position D

Selector lever position for normal driving. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

N neutral

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance in car washes, in selector lever position N.

Parking position P

General information

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After drive readiness is switched off, if selector lever position R, D, or S is engaged.
- After standby is switched off, if selector lever position N is engaged.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened, without pressing the brake pedal, while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, S, or R is engaged.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is engaged and the parking brake is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 130.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

Functional requirements

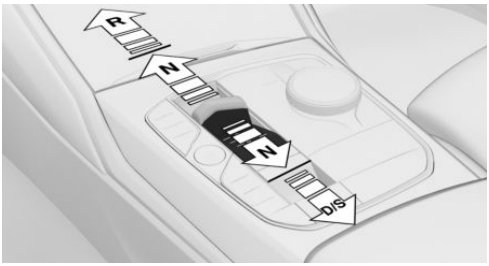
Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

The selection lever position P cannot be changed until all technical prerequisites are met.

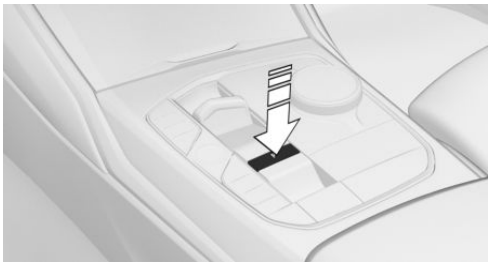
Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

1. Fasten driver's seat belt.
2. Tilt or pull the selector lever into the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed.

The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.



Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

The transmission lock is engaged.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is supposed to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash or to be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake and switch off Automatic Hold.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Engage selector lever position N.
5. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Additional information:

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock, refer to page 126.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

S Sport mode

Principle

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for sportier handling. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

Activating the Sport program

Pull the selector lever from selector lever position D to D/S.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Pull the selector lever to D/S.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Unlock the transmission lock electronically, e.g., to maneuver the vehicle out of a hazardous area in the event of a malfunction.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Quickly press the Start/Stop button three times without stepping on the brake.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the selector lever to position N.

   An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

   Position N is indicated on the selector lever.
4. Maneuver the vehicle from the hazardous area and secure it against rolling away.

Shift paddles

Principle

The shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to change gears manually.

General information

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable RPM and road speeds.

Even in manual mode, the transmission shifts automatically in certain situations, e.g., when speed limits are reached.

Temporary manual mode

In selector lever position D, pulling a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

The engaged gear is also displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance D1.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- Pull and hold the right shift paddle until D is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In Sport program S, pulling a shift paddle switches to manual mode M permanently.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- Pull and hold the right shift paddle until S is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.
- Pull the selector lever to D/S.

When M2 is set manually while the vehicle is stationary, the transmission will no longer shift back to M1. This shift behavior is maintained until M1 is engaged manually or manual mode M is exited.

Shifting

- Upshifting: pull the right shift paddle.
- Downshifting: pull left shift paddle.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Advanced mode

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Steptronic Sport transmission offers an advanced mode with adapted shift characteristics.

- Automatic downshift to lowest possible gear.

  If the left shift paddle is pulled and held, the Steptronic transmission automatically shifts down to the lowest possible gear.
- Avoid automatic upshifting in manual mode.

  In manual mode, the Steptronic transmission does not shift up automatically when speed limits are reached.
- There is no downshifting for kickdown.

Enabling advanced mode

Advanced mode is active in manual mode.

"SPORT": The driving mode must be selected and configured depending on vehicle equipment.

Launch Control

Principle

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on roads with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

Using Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not turn the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Do not use Launch Control when driving in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Breaking-in period, refer to page 276.

Functional requirement

Launch Control can be used when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Driving off with Launch Control

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2.

Press the button.
3. Activate TRACTION on the Control Display.
4. Engage selector lever position S.
5. With the left foot, press down forcefully on the brake.
6. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.
7. The starting engine speed adjusts. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
8. Release the brake within 3 seconds after the destination flag illuminates.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for a short time before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions when used again.

After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF without Launch Control mode.

Steptronic Sport transmission: sprint function

Principle

Depending on the equipment, the Sprint function can be used for an upcoming acceleration process. The Sprint function prepares the drivetrain for the acceleration process.

General information

When the Sprint function is activated, the response characteristics of the vehicle will become more dynamic.

Activating

1. Keep the left shift paddle pulled until SPRINT is displayed in the instrument cluster.
   - ▷ The transmission shifts down to the lowest possible gear and switches to manual operation M.
   - ▷ A dynamic setting has been activated for the drivetrain.
2. Change gears manually.

Automatic deactivation

The Sprint function is ended automatically when driving moderately for a defined period of time.

Manual deactivation

- ▷ Keep the right shift paddle pulled until SPRINT is no longer displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.
- ▷ Press the selector lever from selector lever position S to D.

Driving Dynamics Control

Principle

The Driving Dynamics Control influences, among other things, the vehicle's driving dynamics.

The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

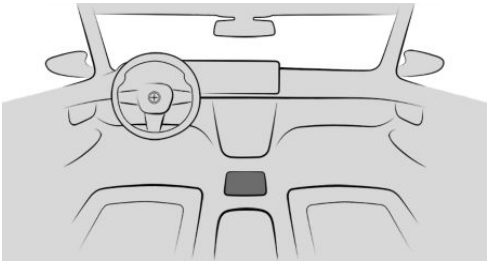
General information

The following systems may be affected, for instance:

- ▷ Drivetrain.
- ▷ Chassis.
- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Cruise control.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Button	Driving mode
SPORT	SPORT SPORT PLUS SPORT INDIVIDUAL
COMFORT	COMFORT
ECO PRO	ECO PRO ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating/deactivating drive modes

Press the button for the desired drive mode repeatedly until the desired drive mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When changing the drive mode, the current drive mode is deactivated.

Driving modes in detail

COMFORT

The COMFORT driving mode is a balanced setting between sporty and consumption-optimized driving.

SPORT

The SPORT driving mode is a dynamic setting for more agility with an optimized suspension.

SPORT PLUS

The SPORT PLUS driving mode is a dynamic setting for maximum agility with an adjusted drive.

ECO PRO

In ECO PRO driving mode, consumption is optimized.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General information

For some driving modes, there is another mode that can be adjusted individually.

The individual configuration set last is activated directly when the driving mode is called up again.

Configuring and resetting

E.g., ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL drive mode:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
6. Select the desired setting.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Enabling INDIVIDUAL

Press the button for the desired driving mode several times.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

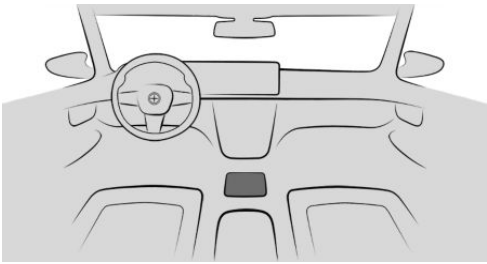
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red.

The parking brake is set.

While driving

Use while driving serves as an emergency braking function.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

With Emergency Stop Assistant

Pull the switch briefly to activate the emergency stop function.

Additional information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page 188.

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and the indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle so that it does not roll away before you exit.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after getting out of the vehicle.

After a power interruption

To reestablish parking brake operability after a power interruption, an initialization may be required.

1. Turn on standby state.
2. (P) Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

PARK (P) The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

General information

The parking brake is automatically engaged under the following conditions:

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠ Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

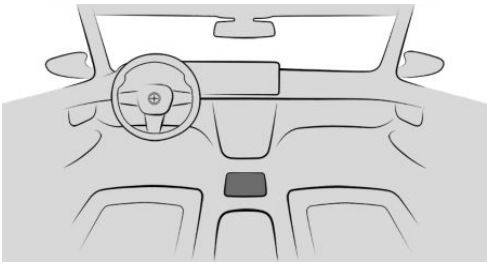
There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

⚠ NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



AUTO H Automatic Hold

Activating Automatic Hold

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.
   The LED lights up.

AUTO H The indicator light lights up green.
Automatic Hold is activated.
After every vehicle restart, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Automatic Hold is activated and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) After stopping, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling away as soon as the indicator light illuminates green.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Automatic parking brake application

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically if the drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was coasting. Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated in this case.

Deactivate Automatic Hold

AUTO H Press the button.
The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

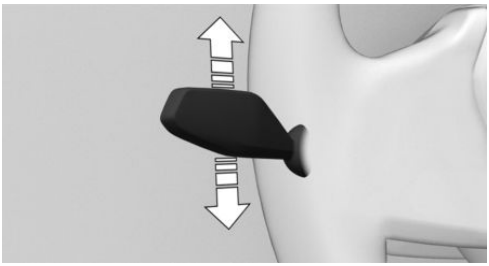
If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also press on the brake pedal when switching off.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors so that the turn signal lamps on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Blinking



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

Brief blinking

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high beams are turned on.

Window wiper system

Safety information

⚠ Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

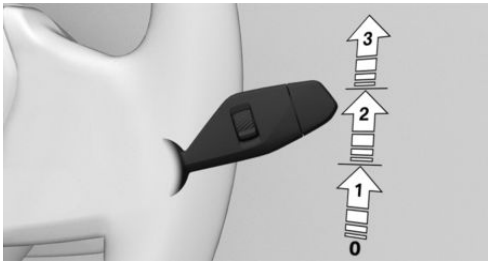
⚠ NOTICE

The wiper blades can wear out or become damaged prematurely when wiping on a dry window for a longer period of time. The wiper motor can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not use the wipers when the window is dry.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Turning on window wiper system

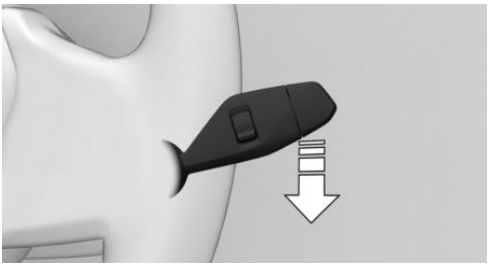


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When the journey is interrupted with the window wiper system turned on: when the journey continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Turning off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▷ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

  The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

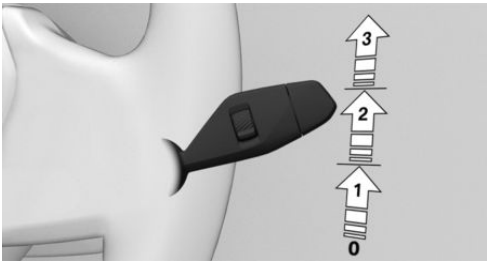
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating rain sensor



Press lever up once from the 0 position, arrow 1.

Wiping operation is started.

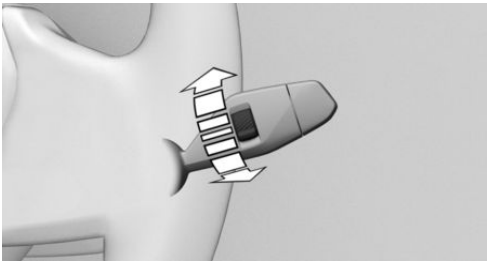
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiping operation may not start.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

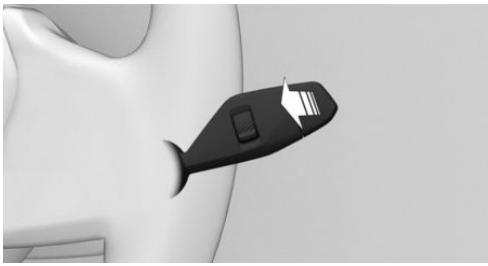
Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

The washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield directly in front of the wiper blade when the wiper moves upward.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded out from the windshield, which is impor-

tant, for instance, when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

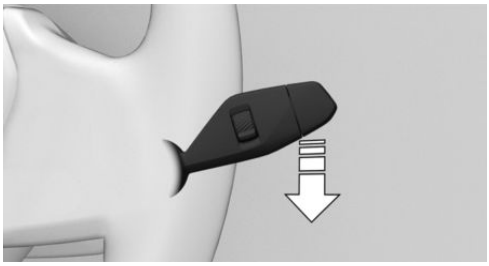
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding out the wipers

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down until the wipers stop in a nearly vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way out from the windshield.

Folding in the wipers

1. Fold the wipers back in onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.

   Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Instrument cluster

Principle

The instrument cluster comprises various digital displays, e.g., a speedometer, time, range, temperatures as well as indicator and warning lights.

General information

The layout of the instrument cluster adapts to the respective driving mode. The positions of some displays may vary, e.g., the selector lever display.

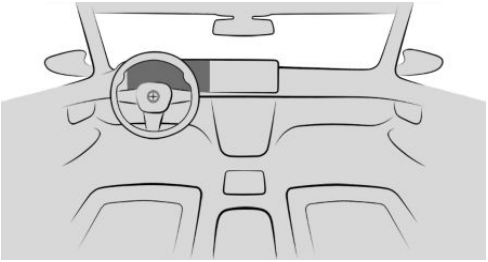
Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Safety information

Warning

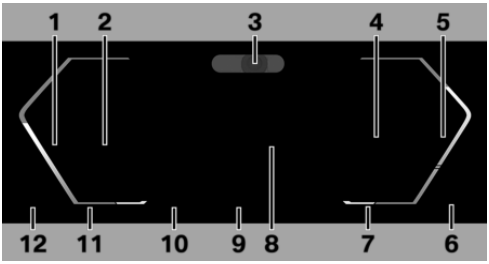
If the displays on the instrument cluster fail, do not use the vehicle. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe manner. If drive readiness is switched off and on again, the malfunction may be rectified and it may be possible to continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be remedied, have the system checked by an authorized service center or by another qualified service center or a repair shop.

Overview



Instrument cluster

Display ranges on the instrument cluster



1 Speedometer
2 Driver assistance systems 201
3 Driver Attention Camera 196
4 Check Control 147
Selector lever display 124
Gear shift indicator 149
Selection lists 148
Using ECO PRO efficiently 283
5 Power gauge 149
Tachometer 150
6 Engine temperature 151

7 Outside temperature 151
8 Central display range 152
Shift lights 151
9 Drive mode 129
10 Speed Limit Info 201
Speed Limit Assistant 215
11 Time 155
12 Fuel gauge 156
Range 156

Additional information:

Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 141.

Operating elements on the steering wheel

Operating element	Function
	Display the menu bar on the instrument cluster.
	Press the corresponding arrow key to move the selection.
	Turn knurled wheel: scroll selection up or down. Press knurled wheel: confirm selection.

Configuring the layout

In COMFORT drive mode, the layout in the instrument cluster can be individually configured and displayed.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "LAYOUT"

   Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Settings

Specific displays can be configured individually, e.g., a second actual speed.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.

Live Vehicle

Principle

Live Vehicle is a virtual representation of your own vehicle with different information, e.g., vehicle status or energy flow indicators.

General information

Appropriate information is shown on the Control Display depending on the driving situation. Fault statuses are not taken into account.

Adaptive content

The following content is displayed in alternating order and, if necessary, depending on the selected drive mode:

- Vehicle status, refer to page 157.
- Current driving condition, refer to page 157.
- Sport displays, refer to page 158.
- Driving style analysis, refer to page 284.
- Trip data, refer to page 152.

Static information

The following information may be shown permanently on the control display regardless of the driving situation and driving mode set.

- ▷ Vehicle status.
- ▷ Trip data.

Adjusting the display

In the Live Vehicle menu, you can choose between an adaptive display with changing content and static content.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Adaptive content": different content is displayed in varying order.
   - ▷ "Trip data": Trip data is permanently displayed.
   - ▷ "Vehicle status": Vehicle status is permanently displayed.

BMW Head-up Display

Principle

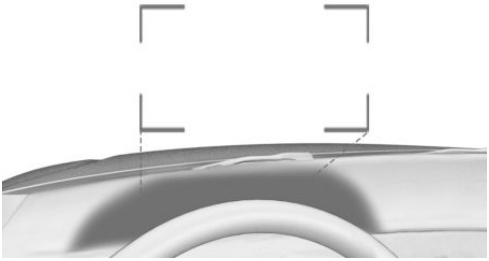
The Head-up display projects important information in the driver's field of view, for instance the speed.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the height of the Head-up display can be stored using the memory function.

Follow instructions for cleaning the Head-up display in the Vehicle Care chapter.

Overview



The protective glass of the Head-up display is located between the steering wheel and the windshield.

Configuring a view

The views for the Head-up Display can be set independently of the display on the instrument cluster, e.g., a reduced view.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "HEAD-UP"

   Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Display

Turning the Head-up display on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up display:

- ▷ Vehicle speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Sport displays.
- ▷ Shift lights.
- ▷ Lists and messages.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Objects on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- ▷ Dust or dirt on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- ▷ Windshield dirty on inside or outside.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet road.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the base settings checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Settings

Individual settings can be entered for the Head-up display, such as for the height, brightness or illustration. In addition, individual displays in the Head-up display can be set up separately such as for Driver Assistance.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape and coating of the special windshield enable the system to function.

In the event of damage, have the special windshield replaced by an authorized service center or by another qualified service center or a repair shop.

Indicator/warning lights

Principle

Indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle. Indicator and warning lights indicate malfunctions in monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belt reminder, refer to page 106.

Airbag system

Indicator light comes on briefly: indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when drive readiness is switched on.

Indicator light illuminates continuously: there is a malfunction. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Airbags, refer to page 167.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 130.

Brake system

Malfunction in the brake system, braking assistance may be faulty. Continue to drive moderately. Avoid abrupt braking, take longer braking distance into account.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emergency Stop Assistant

Emergency Stop function active.

Additional information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page 188.

Risk of collision

Indicator light illuminates or flashes in conjunction with an acoustic signal if a collision is imminent.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 172.

Pedestrian Warning

Indicator light illuminates: risk of collision with a person has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: collision with a person is imminent. Intervene immediately yourself according to the situation.

Additional information:

Pedestrian Warning with City Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.

Forward Collision Warning

Indicator light illuminates: risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle. Increased awareness is required.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: collision with a vehicle is imminent. Intervene immediately yourself according to the situation.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Warning with light braking function, refer to page 175.

Intersection Collision Warning: vehicle detected from the right

Indicator light illuminates: risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the right has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: collision with a crossing vehicle is imminent. Intervene immediately yourself according to the situation.

Additional information:

Intersection warning with City light braking function, refer to page 177.

Intersection Collision Warning: vehicle detected from the left

Indicator light illuminates: risk of collision with crossing vehicle from the left has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: collision with a crossing vehicle is imminent. Intervene immediately yourself according to the situation.

Additional information:

Intersection warning with City light braking function, refer to page 177.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: braking and evading.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page 208.

Steering Assistant

Depending on the national-market version: steering wheel icon flashes red or lights up red. A signal sounds:

The system is switched off.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page 218.

Yellow lights

Steering Assistant

The indicator light lights up and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The indicator warning light flashes: lane boundary driven over.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page 218.

Antilock Braking System

System malfunction. Steerability is limited during emergency braking.

Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forward Collision Mitigation is limited or has malfunctioned

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: function restriction detected, e.g., due to low sun or because the system has failed. You may continue driving. If necessary, follow the instructions from Check Control messages.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 172.

Front Collision Warning switched off

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: the system is turned off.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 172.

Dynamic Stability Control is adjusting, restricted, or has failed

Indicator light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control controls the drive and brake forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

Indicator light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned or is initializing. No driving stabilization.

Have the system immediately checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 197.

The Dynamic Stability Control deactivated or the Dynamic Traction Control activated

The Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or the Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Additional information:

- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 197.
- ▷ Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 199.

Flat tire monitor

The flat tire monitor reports tire pressure loss in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Flat tire monitor, refer to page 312.

Tire pressure monitor

The indicator light illuminates: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- ▷ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ Wheel without wheel electronics installed: have it checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 305.

Steering system

Steering system may be faulty.

Have the system checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- ▷ The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Additional information:

Socket for OBD on-board diagnostics, refer to page 331.

Green lights

Turn signal

Turn signal is on.

Unusually rapid blinking of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 133.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low beams, refer to page 160.

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low beams, refer to page 160.

Automatic High Beam Assistant

Low beams are switched on and the Automatic High Beam Assistant is activated.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

Automatic High Beam Assistant, refer to page 163.

Lane departure warning

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version:

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on. A lane boundary has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle and the system is ready to intervene. Warnings will be issued.

Indicator light flashes: the system is performing a steering intervention.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 179.

Automatic Hold: vehicle is held automatically

AUTO H

Automatic Hold is ready to use. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 132.

Automatic Hold: vehicle secured against rolling away

PARK (P)

The vehicle is automatically secured against rolling away after stopping.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 132.

Manual Speed Limiter

LIM

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page 203.

Cruise Control

The system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 205.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Indicator light illuminates: a vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle in front is detected.

Indicator lamp is blinking: vehicle ahead is driving off.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page 208.

Speed Limit Assistant

Depending on vehicle equipment, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a cruise control system. Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 215.

Speed Limit Assistant

The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 215.

Steering Assistant

The system is activated and helps to keep the vehicle in the lane.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page 218.

Automatic Lane Change Assistant: lane change in progress

Arrow icon for lane change green: the system is carrying out a lane change.

Additional information:

Automatic Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 223.

Automatic Lane Change Assistant: lane change not possible

Gray line for lane boundary on the appropriate side: system detected a lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

Additional information:

Automatic Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 223.

Automatic Lane Change Assistant: functional requirements not met

Depending on the national-market version:

Arrow icon for lane change gray: lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

Additional information:

Automatic Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 223.

Assisted Driving Plus

The system is active.

Alternative display, depending on vehicle equipment.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page 221.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams have been switched on.

Additional information:

- ▷ High beams, refer to page 134.
- ▷ Automatic High Beam Assistant, refer to page 163.

Gray lights

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belts, refer to page 105.

Manual Speed Limiter

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page 203.

Cruise Control

The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 205.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is interrupted.

Indicator light flashes: the conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page 208.

Steering Assistant

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page 218.

Assisted Driving Plus

The system is interrupted and will activate automatically as soon as all functional requirements are met.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page 221.

White lights

Cruise Control with Distance Control

No Distance Control displayed since the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page 208.

Assisted Driving Plus

The system is ready.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page 221.

Check Control

Principle

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of faults in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages

❮ An arrow icon next to the Check Control message indicates whether the Check Control message can be hidden.

◁ ▷ To hide Check Control messages, press the left arrow button on the steering wheel.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the fault is eliminated. If several faults occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

Permanently displayed Check Control messages can be hidden temporarily. These messages are automatically displayed again after approx. 8 seconds.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. ⚠ "Check Control"
5. Select the desired text message.

Display

Check Control

⚠ At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with an icon in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as the cause of a fault or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent text messages, the added text will be automatically displayed on the control display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. ⚠ "Check Control"
5. Select the desired text message.
6. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Selection lists

Principle

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up display.

- ▷ Entertainment source.
- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ List of most recent telephone calls.

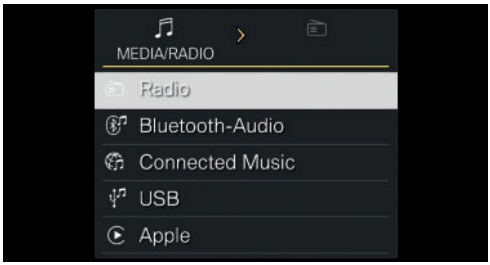
If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

Displaying and using the list

The selection lists can be displayed and operated using the operating elements on the steering wheel.

Control elements	Function
	Turn the knurled wheel: display the entertainment list or scroll up or down in the list. Press knurled wheel: confirm selection.
	Press the corresponding arrow key to change the entertainment source.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.

Display



An example:

To change the track or entertainment source after bringing up the entertainment list, use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the selection.

Turn the thumbwheel up or down to select the desired entry in the list. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the selection.

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Gear shift indicator

Principle

The shift point indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. Using the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

General information

The gear shift indicator is active in manual mode M depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Displays

Information on upshifts or downshifts or the engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
M3	In continuous manual mode M: Optimal gear is engaged.
D3	With shift paddles: temporary manual mode.
S3	With shift paddles: Sport program.
2▸3	Shift information.

Additional information:

Shift paddles, refer to page 126.

Power gauge

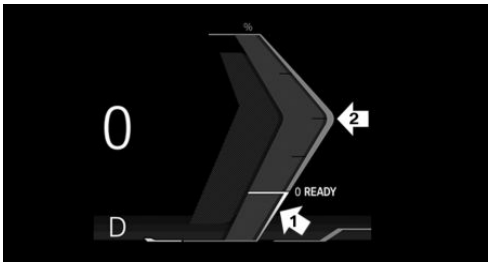
Principle

The power gauge indicates the currently drawn drive power as a percentage.

Enabling/disabling the power gauge

The power display or tachometer is shown depending on the driving mode selected or the individual configuration of the layout.

Display



Needle in range of arrow 1: display for energy recovery such as while decelerating CHARGE.

Needle in range of arrow 2: the drive power in percent, POWER.

Reduced drive power

The available power may be reduced due to certain factors. The power gauge is automatically adjusted accordingly.

In addition, the icons on the power gauge and tachometer indicate reduced drive power.

Icon	Description
	Blue icon: cold drivetrain. White icon: increased drive system temperature, for instance due to sustained or high power demand when driving on mountain roads.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Drive power limitation defined via the BMW Digital Key.
	System-related functional limitation. A Check Control message is displayed in addition where applicable.

Tachometer

General information

Always avoid RPM in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Activating/deactivating the tachometer

The tachometer is displayed depending on the selected drive mode or the individually configured layout.

Reduced engine speed range

The available engine speed range may be reduced due certain factors such as a cold drive system. The tachometer display is automatically adjusted depending on the available engine speed range.

In addition, icons in the tachometer indicate a reduced speed range.

Standby state and drive-ready state

The lettering OFF in the instrument cluster indicates that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

The READY message in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

Additional information:

- ▷ Operating condition of the vehicle, refer to page 42.
- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 121.

Engine temperature

Display

- ▷ Cold engine: the needle is in the blue temperature range, close to the stop of the temperature display, and the text WARM-UP is displayed.

  Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.
- ▷ Normal operating temperature: the needle is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.
- ▷ Hot engine: the needle is in the red temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 327.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

Outside temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37°F/+3°C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there is a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Shift lights

Principle

Shift lights are temporarily displayed on the instrument cluster and indicate the appropriate time to upshift in order to achieve rapid acceleration.

General information

The shift lights are active in manual mode M and can be displayed on the instrument cluster or on the Head-up display in combination with the tachometer.

Functional requirements

- ▷ "SPORT": The driving mode must be selected depending on vehicle equipment.
- ▷ To display the shift lights on the Head-up display, select Sport view.
- ▷ Manual mode M must be activated.
- ▷ Advanced mode must be activated.

Additional information:

Advanced mode, refer to page 127.

Display

Successive fields illuminating yellow indicate an upcoming shift point.

- ▷ Shift when all fields illuminate red at the latest.
- ▷ When the maximum RPM is reached, the entire display flashes red and the fuel supply is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Central display range

General information

The following settings can be selected:

- ▷ Reduced display.
- ▷ Trip data, refer to page 152.
- ▷ Assisted View, refer to page 154.
- ▷ With navigation system: route preview.
- ▷ With navigation system: map view.
- ▷ G-meter, refer to page 155.
- ▷ Entertainment.

Some contents for the central display range can also be configured as a view in the Head-up display.

Additional information:

Head-Up Display, refer to page 140.

Configuring the central display range

The content of the central display range on the instrument cluster can be configured individually, for instance the trip data display.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "CONTENT"

   Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.
3. Select the desired setting using the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Trip data

Principle

The trip data display provides various information about the trip, e.g., average consumption or trip distance.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the setting in the Live Vehicle menu, the trip data is shown dynamically or permanently on the control display.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

Display on the control display

General information

The following trip data is shown on the control display:

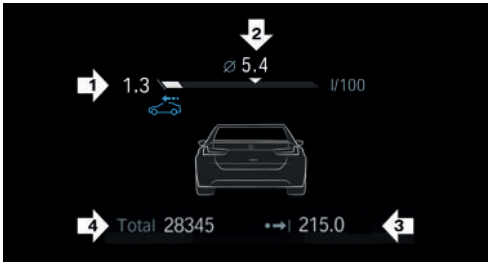
- ▷ Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ▷ ∅ Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Travel time depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- ▷ Distance traveled in Coasting mode.

Displaying trip data continuously

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Trip data"

Display in the instrument cluster

Information on consumption and distance covered can be displayed in the instrument cluster.



- ▷ Current consumption, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average consumption, arrow 2.
- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the configured interval, arrow 3.

The icon is displayed when the vehicle is in Coasting mode.

- ▷ Total mileage, arrow 4.

Current consumption

The current fuel consumption display allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g., to drive economically and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

Average fuel consumption

The average consumption is displayed depending on how the intervals for displaying trip data are configured.

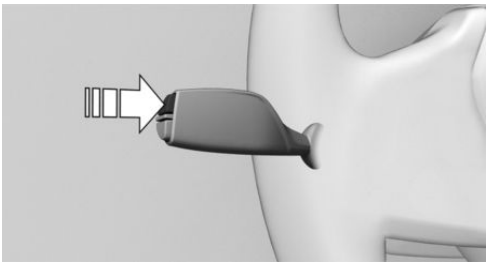
Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display are adjustable.

Using the button on the left steering column switch:

1. Press the button.

   The trip data is displayed.



2. Press button repeatedly until the desired setting is displayed.

Via iDrive:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for trip data"

5. "Values"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Since start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - ▷ "Since last refuel ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - ▷ "Since factory": the values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - ▷ "Since Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

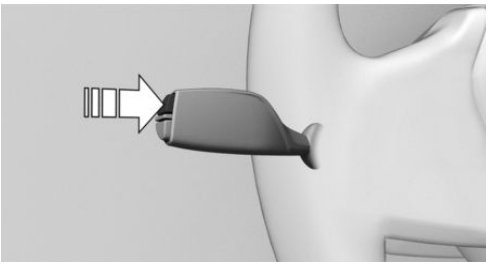
The following interval can be reset manually at any time:

"Since Individual ( )"

Using the button on the left steering column switch:

1. Press the button.

   The trip data is displayed.



2. Press and hold the button until the values are reset.

Via iDrive:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for trip data"
5. "Reset Individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically activated:

"Since Individual ( )"

Assisted View

Principle

With Assisted View, information on driver assistance systems can be displayed on the instrument cluster with a vehicle animation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Permanent display

You can configure how Assisted View is displayed on the central display range and have it shown permanently.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 152

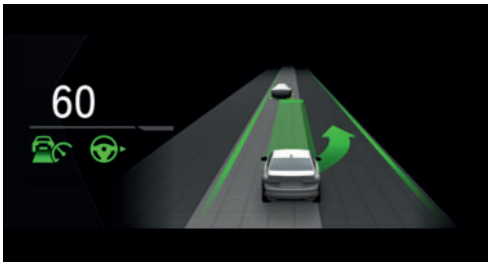
Temporary display

With the temporary display, Assisted View is always shown when driver assistance systems

are active, regardless of how the central display range is configured.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Display Assisted View when Driver Assistance is active"

Display



An example with active Driver Assistance: the indicator and warning lights for the distance control and the Automatic Lane Change Assistant indicate a lane change to the next lane. At the same time, the lane change to the next lane is shown with animation in the Assisted View.

System limits

The system's detection capability is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

The system may indicate something wrong.

Additional information:

▷ Cameras, refer to page 37.

▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

G-meter

General information

The G-meter indicates the forces that are applied in longitudinal and transverse direction on the vehicle occupants while driving.

The display can be configured on the central display range of the instrument cluster.

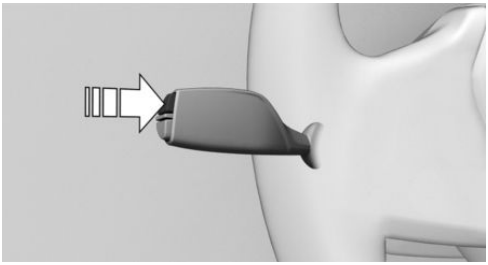
The values are automatically reset whenever you start a new drive.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 152

Manually reseting g-meter values

1. Display the g-meter on the instrument cluster.
2. Press and hold the button on the left steering column until the values are reset.



Date and time

Various settings can be applied for the date and time display such as the date format.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the time zone can be set and automatic time setting can be activated. With automatic time setting, the time, date and, if necessary, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"

3. "System settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. Select the desired settings.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 288.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump icon shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Range

Principle

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current tank of fuel.

General information

The estimated range with remaining fuel is permanently displayed on the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. A low remaining range means that engine functions cannot always be ensured for sporty driving, e.g., when cornering at speed.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as a numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired setting.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems, such as for Check Control.

Depending on the setting, the vehicle status is displayed dynamically or continuously on the Control Display.

Displaying the vehicle status continuously

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"

Overview

Icon	Description
	"Flat Tire Monitor": Status of the flat tire monitor, refer to page 312.
	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 305.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 325.
	"Check Control": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 147.
	"Required services": displaying service notifications, refer to page 158.

Current driving condition

General information

The current driving condition is displayed dynamically while driving in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following states can be displayed:

- ▷ Driving.
- ▷ Coasting mode: "EFFICIENT COASTING"
- ▷ "CHARGING BATTERY"

With mild hybrid technology:

- ▷ Adaptive recuperation.
- ▷ Efficient rolling with engine switched off.

Additional information:

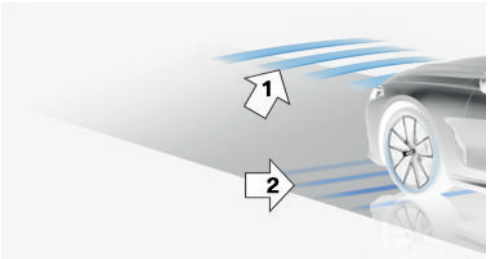
- ▷ Adaptive recuperation, refer to page 284.
- ▷ Coasting, refer to page 285.

Functional requirements

- ▷ COMFORT or ECO PRO drive mode must be selected.
- ▷ With Live Vehicle, the following setting must be selected:

  "Adaptive content"

Display



An example:

The adaptive recuperation is active, arrow 1.

The vehicle battery is charged when the vehicle decelerates, arrow 2.

Sport displays

Principle

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Functional requirements

- ▷ SPORT drive mode must be selected.
- ▷ With Live Vehicle, the following setting must be selected:

  "Adaptive content"

Display

The sport displays are displayed in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Torque.
- ▷ Power.
- ▷ Boost pressure.
- ▷ Engine oil temperature.

Service notifications

Principle

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After turning on the drive readiness, the next service appointment or the distance remaining until the next service is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from your vehicle key.

Display

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Required services"

   Maintenance work and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
5. Select a desired entry to call up detailed information.

Entering appointment dates

Dates for mandatory vehicle inspections can be entered.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Required services"
5. "Vehicle inspection"
6. "Date:"
7. Select the desired setting.

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

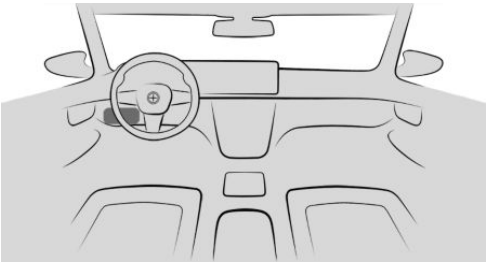
Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Lights and lighting

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Icon	Function
OFF	Lights off. Daytime driving lights.
	Parking lights.
AUTO	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive lighting functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Buttons on the vehicle key

Icon	Function
	Interior lighting. Parts of the exterior lighting.
	Pathway lighting.

Automatic headlight control

Principle

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be turned on.

If the low beams are switched on manually, the automatic headlight control is deactivated.

Activate automatic headlight control

AUTO Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button lights up.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot replace your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, turn the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low-beams and roadside parking lights

General information

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

General information

The parking lights can only be switched on in the low speed range.

Turning on parking lights

Press the button on the light switch element.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the vehicle battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Turning off parking lights

The following options are available to turn off the parking lights:

- ▷ OFF Press the button on the light switch element.
- ▷ Turn on drive-ready state.

  After the drive-ready state is switched on, the automatic headlight control will be activated.

Low beams

Turning on low beams

Press the button on the light switch element.

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

Press the button again to switch on the low beams when the standby state is switched on.

Turning off low beams

Depending on the national-market version, the low beams can be turned off in the low speed range:

- ▷ OFF Press the button on the light switch element.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
	Right roadside parking light on.
	Left roadside parking light off.

Switching off the roadside parking light:

OFF Press the button on the light switch element or switch on the drive-ready state.

Welcome lights

Principle

The welcome light turns on automatically for a limited period of time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on the equipment, select the following setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are turned on.

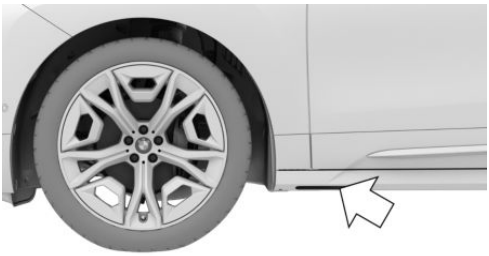
Turning on the welcome light

- ▷ Automatically on approach.
- ▷ During unlocking.
- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

  Depending on the settings, the interior lighting and parts of the exterior lighting will be turned on.

  The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

LED light carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Pathway lighting

Principle

For the pathway lighting, the exterior lighting turns on for a certain period of time after leaving the vehicle in order to illuminate the area surrounding the vehicle.

Switching pathway lighting on

- ▷ After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the turn signal lever forward.
- ▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Setting the duration

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "Pathway lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

Daytime driving lights

General information

The daytime driving lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime driving lights in front.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on vehicle equipment or national-market version:
   - ▷ "Daytime driving lights"
   - ▷ "Rear daytime driving lights"

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

Adaptive lighting functions enable dynamic illumination of the road.

General information

The adaptive lighting functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Cornering light.

Activating the adaptive lighting functions

AUTO Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button lights up.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Cornering light

Principle

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

General information

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering-wheel angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering-wheel angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid blinding oncoming traffic.

Automatic High Beam Assistant

Principle

The Automatic High Beam Assistant detects other road users early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

General information

The Automatic High Beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

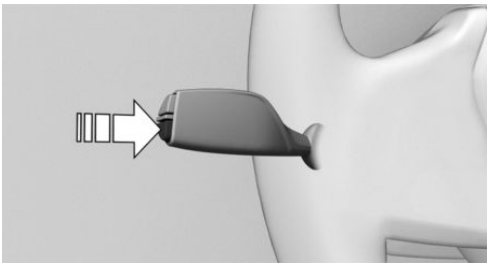
The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Automatic headlight control is activated.
- ▷ Low beams are switched on.

Activating Automatic High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

The headlights are automatically changed between low beams and high beams.

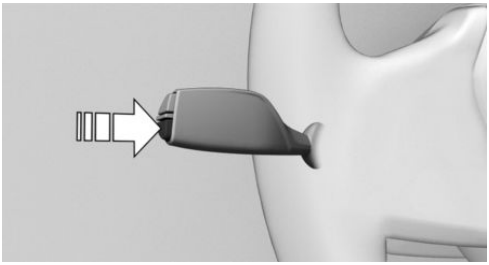
The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

Interruption of the journey with activated Automatic High Beam Assistant: the Automatic High Beam Assistant remains activated when continuing the journey.

The Automatic High Beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the Automatic High Beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating Automatic High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Functional requirements

- Setting at standstill only.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- Light is turned off.

Increasing sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front for approximately 10 seconds.

A Check Control message is displayed. The system responds more sensitively.

Resetting the sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front again for approx. 10 seconds or switch off the drive-ready state.

The sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The Automatic High Beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situations that require this, therefore dim manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The brightness can only be adjusted when the parking lights or low beams are turned on.

Setting the brightness

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

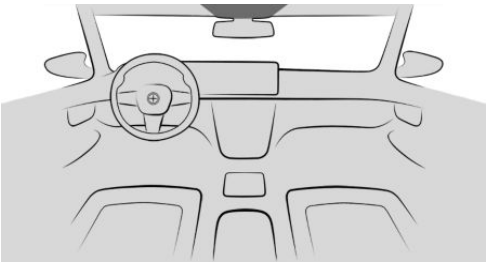
Interior lighting

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Reading lights

Interior lights

Turning interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear headliner.

Turning reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Activating/deactivating ambient light

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Ambient lighting"

Turning ambient light on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be turned on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the color

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Color"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic light

Individual actions, for example incoming calls or opened doors, are indicated by light effects. If the ambient light is disabled, the light effects are still displayed.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Dynamic light"
6. Select the desired setting.

Reduced for night drive

Some lights of the interior lighting are reduced when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Reduced for night driving"

Safety

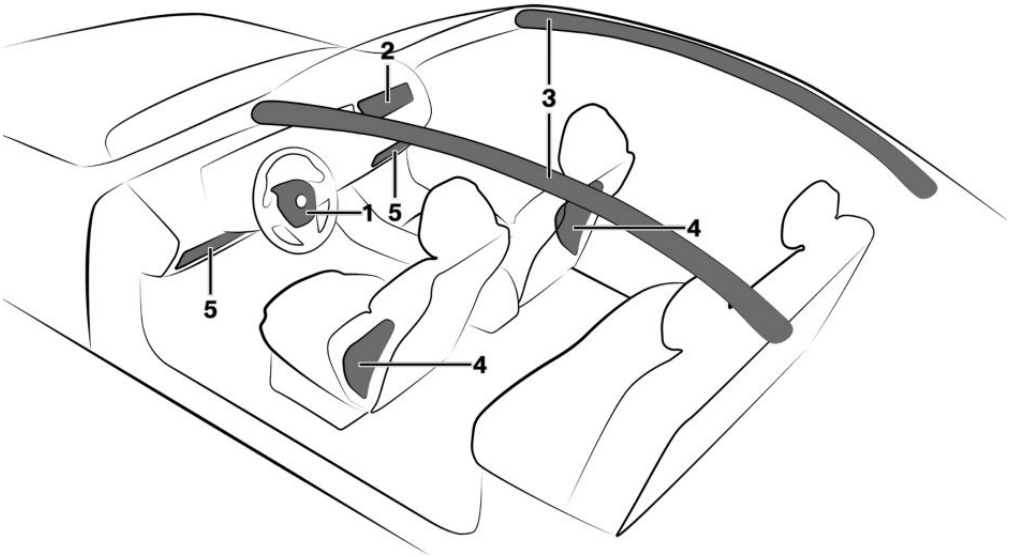
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver

2 Front airbag, front passenger

3 Head airbag

4 Side airbag

5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Head airbag

In the event of a side collision, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side collision events.

Knee airbag

Depending on the national-market version:

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not deployed in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum protective effect of the airbags

Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to deployment. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is deployed.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that the shoulder rests against the backrest when crossing the hands and the upper body is as far back as possible while still maintaining a comfortable grip on the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the footwell and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the passenger's side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive film or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for navigation devices or mobile phones.
- Do not bond the airbag cover panels with adhesive, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the passenger's side as a storage area.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front seats that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated airbag versions.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not disassemble the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after deployment of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional deployment of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, disassembled and scrapped by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is turned on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly, thereby indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the seat belt tensioners.

Malfunction

- ▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is turned on.
- ▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Setting the front seat positions

The power that deploys the driver's/front passenger airbags depends on the position of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function, calibrate the electrical front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the control display.

Additional information:

Seats, refer to page 101.

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

Principle

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat surface must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell.

Functional requirements

To enable accurate recognition of the occupied seat surface:

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that can press against the seat from below.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the headliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light shortly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

- ▷ The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the passenger's side are not activated.
- ▷ The indicator light does not light up when, for instance, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the passenger's side are activated.

Fault of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain seat positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear seat.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.

Collision warning systems

General information

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle has different systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 172.
- ▷ Lane departure warning, refer to page 179.
- ▷ Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 182.
- ▷ Side collision mitigation, refer to page 185.
- ▷ Rear-end collision preparation, refer to page 187.
- ▷ Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page 188.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Turning on/turning off collision warning systems

Depending on national-market version, some of the systems are automatically activated whenever you start driving.

The following functions are adjustable.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. Select the desired settings.

Resetting the settings

The settings of the collision warning systems can be reset to the default settings at vehicle delivery.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Reset to recommended settings"

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

Objects are only considered if they are within the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Forward Collision Mitigation

Principle

The Forward Collision Mitigation can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system may help reduce the severity of the accident.

The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and activate the brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the Forward Collision Mitigation system includes the following functions:

- ▷ Forward Collision Warning with light braking function, refer to page 175.
- ▷ Pedestrian Warning with City Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.
- ▷ Intersection warning with City light braking function, refer to page 177.
- ▷ Evasion Assistant, refer to page 178.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Individual functions may not work correctly when towing with Front Collision Warning enabled or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Switch off Front Collision Warning and Cruise Control before towing.

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.

Speed range

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

Some functions are deactivated earlier.

The system is enabled as soon as the speed drops below these values again.

Turning the Forward Collision Mitigation on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

Turning on system manually

The system is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Setting the warning time, refer to page 173.

Turning system off manually

Depending on national-market version, the adjustment can only be made when the vehicle is at a standstill or in a very low speed range.

If necessary, the switch-off must be confirmed successively on the Control Display.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
7. "Off"

Setting the warning time

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
7. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The more sensitive the warning time is set to be, the more warnings will be displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings and responses.

The system checks for visual impairments. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster captures the driver's field of vision. Visibility and field of vision also affect the timing of the warnings.

Turning the warning signal on/off

System warning signals can be turned off, depending on vehicle equipment.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
7. "Warning tone"

Display in the instrument cluster

The following icons are shown on the instrument cluster and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up Display:

Icon	Meaning
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Icon illuminates yellow: function restriction detected, e.g., due to low sun or because the system has failed. You may continue driving. If necessary, follow the instructions from Check Control messages.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Icon illuminates yellow: the system is turned off.
	Risk of collision, for instance with a person.
	Risk of collision, for instance with a preceding vehicle.
	Risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle crossing from the right.
	Risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle crossing from the left.
	General risk of collision.

The image of the respective icon may vary because the system may detect multiple objects.

Warning function

The Forward Collision Mitigation warns on different warning levels, depending on the respective hazardous situation.

In the event of a system warning, the driver must intervene immediately and in accordance with the situation.

▷ A red icon lights up:

A hazardous situation has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

▷ A red icon flashes:

There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.

▷ A warning signal sounds:

There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.

▷ Automatic brake intervention:

Depending on the equipment and situation in case of an imminent danger of collision, the system can also intervene with an automatic brake intervention and automatically decelerate the vehicle, if necessary, to a complete stop.

When the brake pedal is pressed quickly and hard, the maximum braking force of the vehicle is used.

Automatic brake intervention

In case of a risk of collision, the system can assist with an automatic brake intervention, if necessary.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

A brake intervention can be canceled by stepping on the accelerator pedal with sufficient force, releasing the brake pedal, or by actively steering.

City brake function: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

With radar sensor: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, only a brief brake intervention will occur.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

Objects are only considered if they are within the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ With limitation of the driving stability control systems.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after drive readiness is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

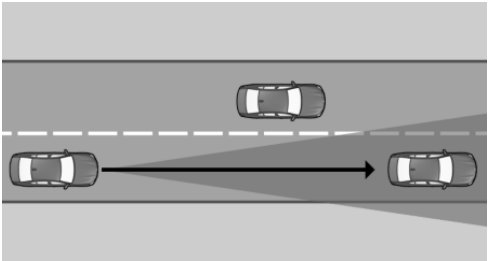
Approach control warning with light braking function

Principle

The Approach control warning with light braking function warns of a possible risk of collision and may brake independently.

In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

The system considers the driver's vehicle handling when responding. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions occur less frequently.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning icon is displayed when a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Forward Collision Warning with a detected vehicle.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 172.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, or only detected with a delay, for instance:

- ▷ Vehicle driving slowly in front and being approached at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear designs.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. When the vehicle slows down to below this speed, the system is reactivated.

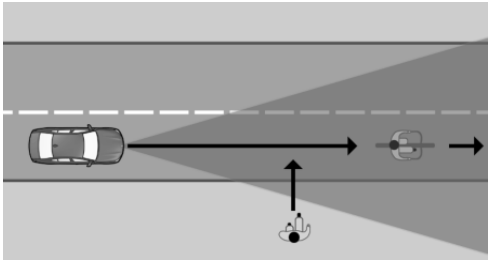
Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation

Principle

At speeds that are common in towns and cities, the Pedestrian Warning with City Brake function warns the driver of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists, and brakes automatically if necessary.

In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning icon is displayed when a collision with a detected pedestrian is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a pedestrian.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

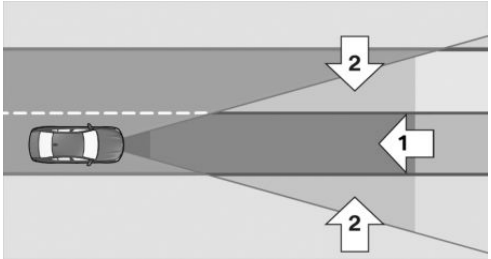
Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 172.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range



The detection range in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Extended area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- ▷ Pedestrians with insufficient height.

Upper speed limit

Depending on vehicle equipment, the system responds to pedestrians when the vehicle peed is below 50 mph/80 km/h.

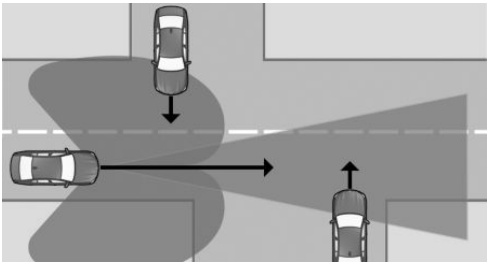
Intersection warning with City light braking function

Principle

At speeds that are common in towns and cities, the Intersection Collision Warning with City Brake function can warn the driver of a possible risk of collision with crossing traffic at intersections and junctions, and brakes automatically if necessary.

In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

Vehicles that cross your driving direction can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter into the detection range of the system.

At intersections and junctions, a warning is issued when a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The system warns of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning icon is displayed when a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the right.
	Risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the left.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 172.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Crossing vehicles when they are hidden, e.g. by buildings.
- Vehicles with an unusual side view.
- Vehicles in highly dynamic driving situations.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- Crossing two-wheeled vehicles.

Upper speed limit

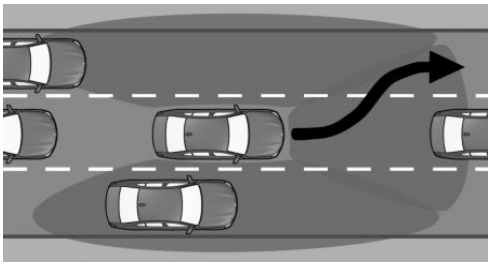
The system responds to crossing vehicles when the vehicle speed is below approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

Evasion Assistant

Principle

The Evasion Assistant can support the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles or persons suddenly appear.

General information



The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible.

Sensors monitor and detect the clearance in front of the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the areas next to the vehicle are also monitored.

If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver made

by the driver by safely performing automatic steering movements.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Functional requirements

- ▷ Forward Collision Mitigation is active.
- ▷ Sensors detect sufficient clearance around vehicle.

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning icon is displayed when a collision with a detected vehicle or detected pedestrian is imminent.

Icon	Meaning
	Warning when a vehicle is detected.
	Warning when a pedestrian is detected.
	Warning for unknown obstacles.

Warning function with evasion support

A warning is displayed when there is an imminent risk of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in case of a warning.

The system is designed to provide assistance by taking evasive action when there is a risk of collision.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

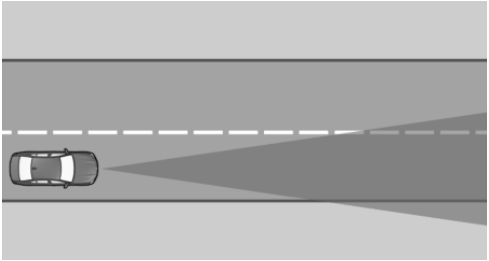
- ▷ Vehicle driving slowly in front and being approached at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear designs.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- ▷ Pedestrians with insufficient height.

Lane Departure Warning

Principle

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle is about to run off the road or exit the lane.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning starting at a minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

Warnings are displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set in the respective direction before exiting the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane boundaries for the lane departure warning to be active.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Turning the Lane Departure Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

Turning on system manually

The system is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Setting the warning time, refer to page 180.

Turning system off manually

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, you must successively confirm the switch-off on the Control Display.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Off"

Setting Lane Departure Warning

Setting the warning time

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Reduced"

Some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance when purposely driving over pathway lines in curves or with dynamic passing without a turn signal.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on the national-market version: turning steering intervention on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Steering intervention"

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention is automatically active after every driving off.

Display in the instrument cluster

Different system statuses are displayed on the instrument cluster, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Icon	Meaning
	The icon is illuminated green: the system is turned on. A lane boundary has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle and the system is ready to intervene. Warnings will be issued. Icon flashes green: the system is performing a steering intervention.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 154.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane boundary has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version: if a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time. During an active steering intervention, the display in the instrument cluster will blink.

For instance, the steering intervention will be suppressed in the following situations:

- With hard accelerating or braking.
- When blinking.
- With hazard warning system switched on.
- In driving situation with high driving dynamics.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is adjusting.
- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- When actively merging back to your own lane after passing.

Warning signal

Depending on the national-market version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel during the steering intervention itself, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, a continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message advise to pay closer attention to the lane.

End of warning

For instance, the warning or an active steering intervention will be canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after a few seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- With hard accelerating or braking.
- With hazard warning system switched on.
- When blinking.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is adjusting or is disabled.
- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- With manual steering intervention.
- When another driver assistance system is activated, if applicable.
- Lane boundaries are not detected.
- When the system limits are reached.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after drive readiness is switched on via the Start/Stop button.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. Depending on the national-market version, a yellow icon is also illuminated.

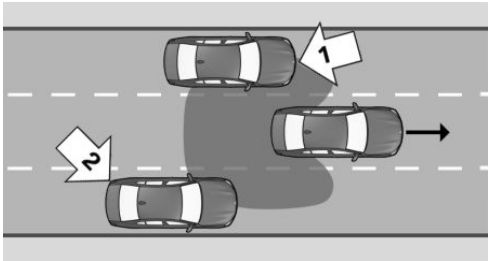
Active Blind Spot Detection

Principle

Active Blind Spot Detection detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

The light in the exterior mirror emits warnings at different steps.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed in the Active Blind Spot Detection menu.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in your blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in an adjacent lane, arrow 2. The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimly.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above. The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

When turning at a speed of up to approx. 12 mph/20 km/h, the steering wheel will not vibrate.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Turning Active Blind Spot Detection on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the Active Blind Spot Detection

Setting the warning time

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on the national-market version: turning steering intervention on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. "Steering intervention"

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 154.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

The light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision.

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

In case of an acute warning, the steering wheel briefly vibrates and the light in the exterior mirror blinks brightly.

An acute warning is given when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Another vehicle is located in the critical area.
- ▷ Your own vehicle is approaching the other lane.
- ▷ Depending on the system setting when the turn signal is turned on.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been turned off.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version: when there is no response to the vibration of the steering wheel at speeds of up to 130 mph/210 km/h and the lane marking is crossed, the system engages the active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

The steering intervention occurs when a minimum speed is reached. The minimum speed is displayed on the control display.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light in exterior mirror during vehicle unlocking serves as a system self-test.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is reactivated.

Displaying warnings

Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings of critical situations.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

Depending on the national-market version: the steering intervention may be limited, for instance in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- With lane boundaries that are not white.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If the camera is impaired.
- Up to 10 seconds after drive readiness is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

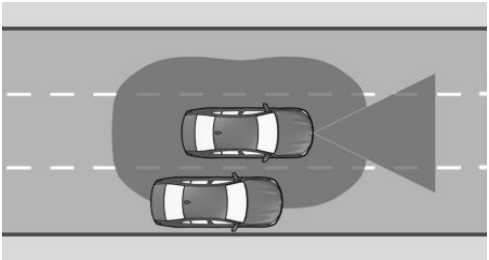
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. Depending on the national-market version, a yellow icon is also illuminated.

Side collision mitigation

Principle

The side-collision warning helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the space next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed and up to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

If, for instance, another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning with a blinking LED in the exterior mirror, a Check Control message and a vibrating steering wheel. If necessary, the system will carry out an active steering intervention.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Functional requirement

The camera behind the windshield determines the lane boundary positions.

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Camera behind the windshield.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Turning the side collision warning on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Side collision warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 154.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

The light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision.

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version, if necessary, the system engages the active steering intervention to prevent a collision and maintain the vehicle within its own lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- With lane boundaries that are not white.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after drive readiness is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

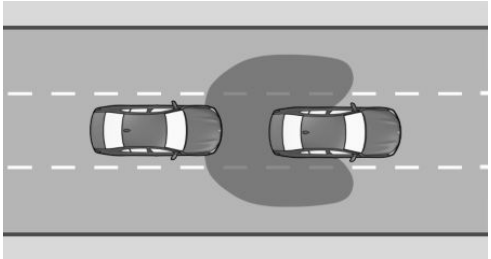
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited.

Rear-end collision preparation

Principle

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the rear-end collision preparation can react to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system can react as follows:

- Where applicable, the hazard warning flashers will be switched on.
- Where applicable, the PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the radar sensors on the sides and rear.

Turning rear-end collision preparation on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When driving in reverse.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system function may be limited in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- The speed of the approaching vehicle is very slow.

Emergency Stop Assistant

Principle

If the driver is no longer fit to drive, the Emergency Stop Assistant helps to safely bring the vehicle to a standstill.

General information

The emergency stop function is not triggered automatically. The emergency stop function can only be triggered manually by the occupants.

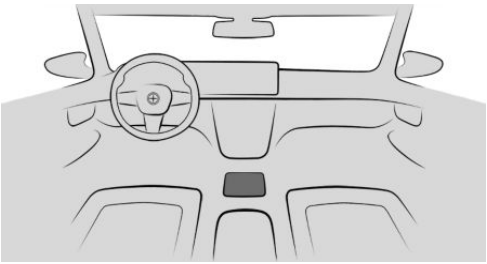
When the system is activated, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in its own lane by use of lane guidance.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the system includes a lane change function.

With lane change function: on motorways or motorway-like roads, the system steers the vehicle to the side of the road or shoulder where possible. On other roads or with high traffic volume, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in the current lane.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Parking brake

Functional requirements

- ▷ The function can be activated at speeds of approx. 6 mph/10 km/h up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.
- ▷ With lane change function: lane changes are executed when the traffic situation allows.

Activating the emergency stop function

Pull the switch for the parking brake briefly to activate the emergency stop function.

- ▷ With lane change function: releasing the switch may trigger an automatic lane change.
- ▷ The system will take control of the vehicle for a maximum of 2 minutes.
- ▷ The hazard warning system is switched on.
- ▷ An emergency call is triggered.

Canceling the emergency stop function

The driver can cancel the emergency stop function by actively taking control of the vehicle throughout the entire process.

For instance, the emergency stop function will be canceled in the following situations:

- ▷ When steering.
- ▷ When blinking.
- ▷ When depressing the accelerator pedal.
- ▷ When switching off the hazard warning system.
- ▷ When canceling the Emergency Request.
- ▷ When switching the selector lever position at a standstill.
- ▷ The parking brake switch is pressed.

At standstill

As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the system will carry out the following settings:

- ▷ The vehicle is secured against rolling away.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on.
- ▷ The central locking system is unlocked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Status
	Icon illuminates red: emergency stop function enabled.

Without lane change function:

Icon	Status
	Icon illuminates green: when a lane boundary is detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	Icon illuminates gray: lane guidance has been temporarily interrupted.
	Icon illuminates yellow: the lane boundary has been crossed. When lane markings are detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	Steering wheel icon illuminates yellow: do not grip the steering wheel with your hands. The system is still active.
	Steering wheel icon illuminates red and an acoustic signal sounds: do not grip the steering wheel with your hands. Interruption of lane guidance is imminent.
	Icon illuminates red and an acoustic signal sounds: lane guidance is switched off.

System limits

Use the system only in the event of a driver failure.

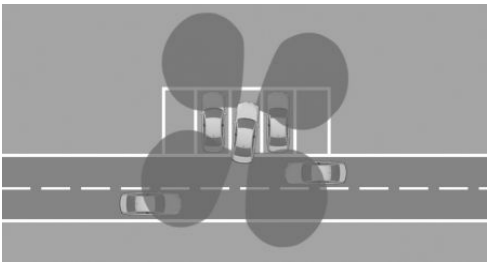
The system cannot replace the driving performance of a driver who is fit to drive.

Cross traffic warning

Principle

At blind driveway exits or when driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, road users approaching from the side are detected sooner by the cross traffic warning than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



The area behind the vehicle is monitored by sensors.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area around the vehicle in front of the vehicle is monitored as well.

The system indicates approaching road users.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react

to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Turning on/turning off the cross traffic warning manually

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "CROSS TRAFFIC WARNING"
7. Select the desired setting.

Turning on the cross traffic warning automatically

If the system was activated on the control display, it is automatically turned on as soon as the Park Distance Control or a camera view is active and a selector lever position is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the front system is turned on when a gear position is engaged.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active when the vehicle is started.

Turning off the cross traffic warning automatically

The system is automatically turned off in the following situations:

- ▷ When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- ▷ When a certain distance covered is exceeded.

Warning function

General information

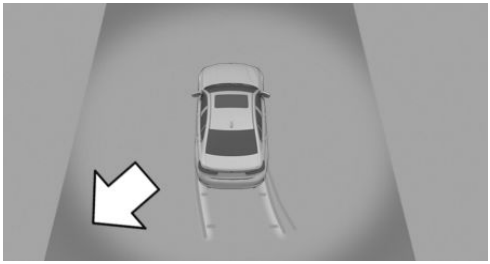
The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

Visual warning

Light in the exterior mirror

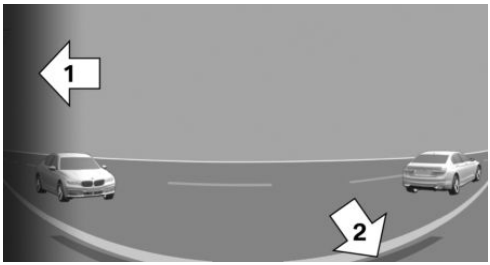
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving in reverse.

Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Depending on vehicle equipment: display in camera image



Depending on the direction of travel, the view to the front or back is displayed in the camera image.

The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera image flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual warning, a signal tone sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

Depending on the national-market version, the signal tone will already sound when the gear position is engaged.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The function can be limited, for instance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.

BMW Drive Recorder

Principle

The BMW Drive Recorder stores brief video recordings of the vehicle surroundings, e.g., to document surrounding traffic.

General information

Video recordings can be saved in different ways:

- Automatic storage of the recording.

  The function allows the documentation of the event of an accident.
- Manual storage of the recording.

  The function allows the documentation of traffic situations.

The assistance systems' cameras are used to record, e.g., Panorama View.

Additionally, the following parameters are stored for the trip:

- Date.
- Time.
- Vehicle speed.
- Global Positioning System coordinates.

Data protection

The permissibility of recording and using video recordings is contingent upon the statutory regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with respective applicable regulations.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends confirming there are no statutory or regulatory constraints on use of the system in your state or country prior to the initial use. In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed.

Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, information about the system is required when handing off the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Standby or drive readiness is switched on.
- ▷ BMW Drive Recorder is activated.
- ▷ Privacy Policy was accepted.
- ▷ Recording type was selected.
- ▷ Recording time was selected.

Activating/deactivating the BMW Drive Recorder

The BMW Drive Recorder must be activated before the first use of the recording function.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. Accept Privacy Policy.
5. "Settings"
6. "Allow recording"
7. Select the desired setting.

Recording functions

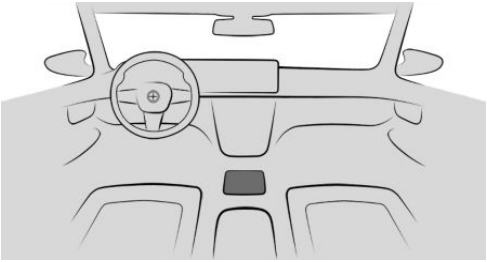
Automatic recording

Recordings are saved automatically when the vehicle sensors detect an accident.

The system saves recordings made up to 20 seconds before and after saving was triggered.

Manual recording

Using the button



Press and hold this button.

Via iDrive

Start the recording:

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Recording"
5. "Start recording"

Recording can also be started by selecting the widget on the Control Display.

The system saves recordings up to 20 seconds before and after storage is triggered.

Recording playback and administration

Stored video recordings can be played back, exported and deleted.

For your own safety, the video recording is only displayed on the Control Display up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h. In some national-market versions, the video recording is only displayed if the parking brake is engaged or if the selector lever is in the P position.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Recordings"
5. Select desired recording.

If a camera change occurred during the recording, different segments of the video can be selected.

Settings

General information

Various settings can be applied.

Recording type

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Recording time

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Cameras

Different cameras can be selected.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. "Cam. selection"
6. Select desired camera.

In case of an accident, the system switches automatically to "All" cameras.

If driver assistance systems are active, their camera views are selected automatically.

System limits

In the event of serious accidents, it may not be possible to store recordings if the damage to the vehicle is too great or the power supply was interrupted.

Active Protection

Principle

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- ▷ Emergency braking.
- ▷ Severe understeering.
- ▷ Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- ▷ Forward Collision Warning with light braking function: automatic brake intervention.
- ▷ Front collision mitigation: Brake Assistant
- ▷ Rear-end collision preparation: detection of impending rear-end collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situations might not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Function

Depending on vehicle equipment, the driver and front passenger seat belts are automatically tightened once after driving off, if the seat belt is fastened.

Depending on vehicle equipment: In critical accident situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- Automatic pretensioning of the front seat belts.
- Automatic closing of the windows. The windows remain open with a small gap.
- The glass sunroof/panoramic glass sunroof closes automatically. The sun protection is also closed.
- Automatic Positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front seat belts are loosened again. If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the seat belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the seat belt before continuing to drive. All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Principle

In certain accident situations, the PostCrash iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill without intervention by the driver.

General information

The PostCrash iBrake can reduce the risk of a further collision and its consequences.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle deceleration

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than automatic braking allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the brake pressure will be higher than the brake pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic brake actuation is interrupted.

Canceling automatic braking

It may be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance when making an evasive maneuver.

Cancel automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

Principle

The Fatigue Alert can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. The system recommends a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After starting the trip, the system is trained to the driver, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.
- Attention of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a break recommendation.

Break recommendation

Setting break recommendation

The fatigue alert is active automatically each time the drive-ready state is switched on and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Fatigue Alert"
7. Select the desired setting.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another break recommendation cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

System functionality may be limited. If system functionality is limited, either no warning is issued or an incorrect warning is issued. The system function may be limited in the following situations:

- When the time is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road condition is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

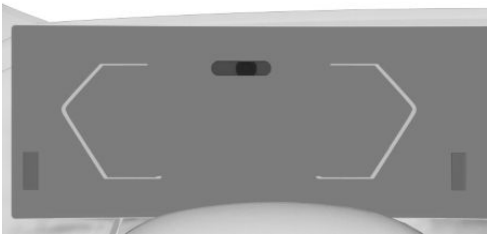
Depending on the equipment, a camera in the instrument cluster monitors the driver activity or the driver's direction of view.

General information

For support by assistance systems, the attention of the driver is analyzed by evaluating the head position and eye opening of the driver.

For full operability, make sure that the field of view of the Driver Attention Camera is not obstructed.

Overview



Depending on the equipment, the instrument cluster has up to 3 infrared light sources. Depending on the light conditions, they can be visible when the vehicle is in standby mode.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- With sunglasses with high protection from infrared light.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Antilock Braking System

Principle

The Antilock Braking System prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steerability even during emergency braking, which increases the active driving safety.

The Antilock Braking System is ready after each time drive readiness is turned on.

Brake assistant

The brake assistant applies maximum braking assistance when the brake is depressed quickly. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency braking. The advantages of the Antilock Braking System are thereby utilized.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of emergency braking.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Cruise Control with Distance Control, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly with brake actuation in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The drive-off assistant supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

Dynamic Stability Control helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by brake interventions on individual wheels.

General information

The system detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- ▷ Skidding, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of adhesion of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

Warning

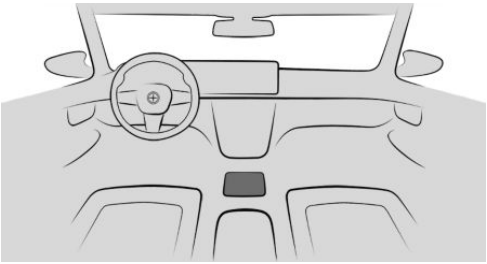
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating Dynamic Stability Control

General information

When Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, driving stability is reduced while accelerating and when cornering.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

Activating/deactivating the system

1.

Press the button to open the selection.
2. "DSC OFF"

   DSC OFF is displayed on the instrument cluster and the Dynamic Stability Control indicator light illuminates.
3. Press

the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

   DSC OFF is no longer displayed on the instrument cluster and the Dynamic Stability Control indicator light goes out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

DSC OFF: Displayed on the instrument cluster when Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Indicator/warning lights

Indicator light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Indicator light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control controls the drive and brake forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

Indicator light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned or is initializing. No driving stabilization.

Have the system immediately checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Automatic program change

Dynamic Stability Control can be activated automatically by Front Collision Mitigation depending on the situation.

Dynamic Traction Control

Principle

The Dynamic Traction Control is a variant of the Dynamic Stability Control where the drive power is optimized.

The system ensures maximum drive power on unusual road conditions, for instance unplowed snow covered roads or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

General information

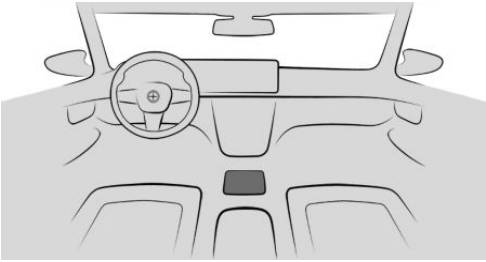
When the Dynamic Traction Control is activated, there is maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when cornering.

A brief activation of the Dynamic Traction Control may be useful in the following situations:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▷ When driving off from deep snow or loose ground.
- ▷ When driving with tire chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating the Dynamic Traction Control

1.

Press the button to open the selection.
2. "Traction"

   TRACTION is displayed on the instrument cluster and the Dynamic Stability Control indicator light illuminates.
3. Press

the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

   TRACTION is no longer displayed on the instrument cluster and the Dynamic Stability Control indicator light goes out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

TRACTION: Displayed on the instrument cluster when Dynamic Traction Control is enabled.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light illuminates: the Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Automatic program change

In certain situations, Dynamic Stability Control is activated automatically:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Distance Control is activated.
- ▷ In case of a brake intervention by Front Collision Mitigation.
- ▷ If the suspension control system fails.
- ▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.

xDrive

Principle

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. Concerted action by the xDrive and other suspension control systems, such as Dynamic Stability Control, further optimizes traction and driving dynamics.

General information

xDrive variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as required by the driving situation and road conditions.

Because of the needs-based use of the all-wheel-drive system, Efficient4x4 yields a reduction in consumption.

M sport differential

The active M differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential depending on the driving situation. This prevents spinning of a single rear wheel and thereby provides optimal traction in any driving situation.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.

Variable sport steering

The variable sport steering facilitates direct and agile handling with little steering effort. The variable sports steering works independently of the current speed, varying the steering ratio in line with the steering angle.

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Speed warning

Principle

The speed warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

Another warning occurs when the set speed limit is exceeded again after it has dropped by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"

Adjusting the speed

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"
7. "Warning above:"
8. Select the desired setting.

Applying current speed as the speed warning

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"
7. "Adopt current speed"

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra icons are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up display.

The system may also show speed limits that apply to routes that are not signposted if the navigation system has current map data.

For information on the current map version and map updates, see Map update in the Navigation system chapter.

Additional information:

▷ Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

The Speed Limit Info can be shown or hidden via iDrive in the instrument cluster. Depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info is continuously displayed in the instrument cluster.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. "Speed limits"
8. "Show current limit"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
SPEED LIMIT 30 50 km/h	Current speed limit. Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
LIMIT	No data on current speed limit available.
LIMIT	Speed Limit Info not available.

If the detected speed limit has been exceeded, the display will flash.

Settings

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. Select the desired setting.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Camera, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system function may be limited and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ Traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers, or paint.
- ▷ Traffic signs do not comply with the standard.
- ▷ In areas that are not included in the navigation system map data.
- ▷ If navigation system map data is invalid, outdated, or unavailable.
- ▷ When roads deviate from the navigation, such as due to changes in road layout.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- ▷ In case of electronic traffic signs.
- ▷ When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- ▷ In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.

Manual Speed Limiter

Principle

The Manual Speed Limiter can be used to set a speed limit, for instance to prevent the vehicle from exceeding speed limits.

General information

The system can limit the speed, starting at 20 mph/30 km/h. The vehicle can be driven at any speed below the set speed limit.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
LIM	System on/off.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Changing the speed limit.

Operation

Turning on the speed limiter

LIM Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is accepted as the speed limit.

If the system is turned on while the vehicle is stationary or driving at low speeds, 20 mph/30 km/h is set as the speed limit.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the corresponding speed.

When the speed limit is activated, Dynamic Stability Control is switched on and the vehicle may change to COMFORT drive mode.

Turning off the speed limiter

LIM Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

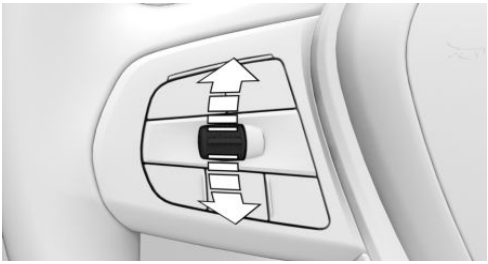
- When the engine is switched off.
- When Cruise Control is switched on.
- When certain driving modes are activated via Driving Experience Control.

The displays turn off.

Stopping the speed limiter

If the reverse gear is engaged or in Neutral, the system is interrupted when rolling backwards.

Changing the speed limit



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed limit is set.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

If the set speed limit is reached or unintentionally exceeded, such as when driving downhill, the vehicle is not actively braked.

When the speed limit is set during a trip to a value below the current speed, the vehicle coasts until it drops to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Exceeding the speed limit

When the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit, a warning is issued.

The speed limit can be exceeded intentionally.

Press the accelerator pedal all the way down to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, the limit is automatically reactivated.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning

If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes while the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- If the speed limit is exceeded unintentionally, a signal sounds.
- When the speed limit is reduced to below the vehicle speed while driving, the signal sounds after some time.
- When the speed limit is intentionally exceeded by stepping on the accelerator pedal all the way down, there is no signal.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

- Green marking: system is active.
- Gray marking: system is interrupted.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- ▷ The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.

- ▷ Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Cruise Control without Distance Control

Principle

With the Cruise Control, a set speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the set speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ With high traffic volume.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Individual functions may not work correctly when towing with Front Collision Warning enabled or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Switch off Front Collision Warning and Cruise Control before towing.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
RESUME	Continue cruise control with the last setting.
CANCEL	Interrupt cruise control.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Turning Cruise Control on/off

Turning on the system

Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as set speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Turning off the system

Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

Interrupting Cruise Control

Stopping the system manually

CANCEL When active, press the button.

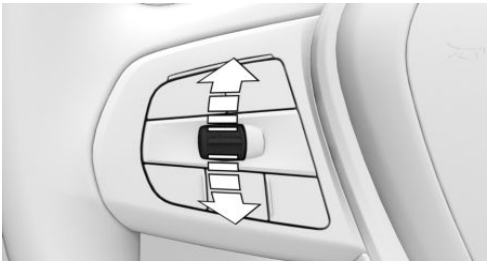
Stopping the system automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When braking manually.
- Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- While Dynamic Traction Control is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is adjusting.

Adjusting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

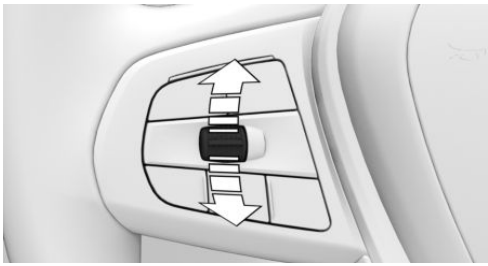
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- ▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional deceleration or acceleration may occur.

RESUME Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

- ▷ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- ▷ Indicator light green: system is active.
- ▷ Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.
- ▷ No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-up display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

System limits

The set speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Principle

Using the Cruise Control, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

General information

The system maintains the set speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be adjusted at several levels. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a standstill and then drives off again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Otherwise, drive off on your own, such as by pressing the accelerator pedal or the rocker switch on the steering wheel.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident is greater when there is a high speed differential to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When approaching a slowly moving vehicle at speed.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When approaching stationary vehicles at speed.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Individual functions may not work correctly when towing with Front Collision Warning enabled or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Switch off Front Collision Warning and Cruise Control before towing.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	With Steering Assistant: Cruise control on/off.
MODE	With Steering Assistant: Select function.
	Without Steering Assistant: Cruise control on/off.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
RES CANCEL	With Steering Assistant: Interrupt cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.
RESUME	Without Steering Assistant: Continue cruise control with the last setting.
CANCEL	Without Steering Assistant: Interrupt cruise control.
	Increase the distance. Switch Distance Control on/off.
	Reduce distance. Switch Distance Control on/off.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Application range

The system is best used on well-maintained roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and depends, for example, on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Turning Cruise Control on/off or stopping it

With Steering Assistant: Assisted Driving Mode

General information

This button is used to switch the configured function on and off.

The button can be used to set the primarily used function.

Setting the function

When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the toolbar. The toolbar for Assisted Driving mode is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Icon	Function
	Cruise Control with Distance Control.
	Cruise Control with Distance Control and Steering Assistant.

The selected function is shown in green.

Turning on the system

With Steering Assistant:

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. If necessary, set the cruise control.

Without Steering Assistant:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as set speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Turning off the system

To switch off the system while stationary, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel:

With Steering Assistant.

Without Steering Assistant.

The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

Stopping the system manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel:

With Steering Assistant.

Without Steering Assistant.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

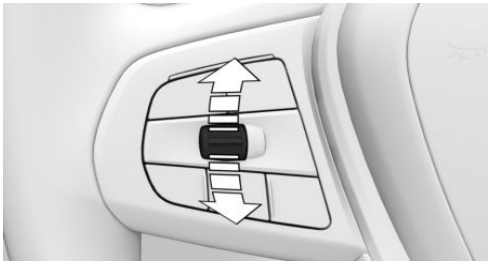
Stopping the system automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ The driver applies the brakes.
- ▷ Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- ▷ While Dynamic Traction Control is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- ▷ While Dynamic Stability Control is adjusting.
- ▷ When the vehicle is stationary, the seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.
- ▷ The system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- ▷ The detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Adjusting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

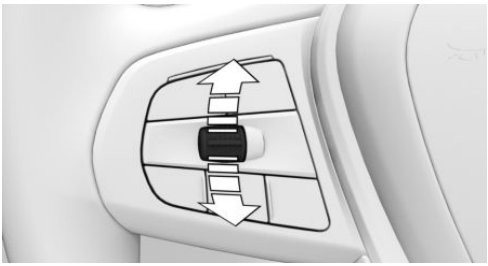
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, deceleration can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the surrounding traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Reducing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Increasing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Automatic adaptation of the distance

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: the system can be adjusted so that the distance to the vehicle driving in front is automatically adjusted within the configured distance according to the traffic situation or the ambient conditions, for instance poor visibility.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. "Situational distance control"

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional deceleration or acceleration may occur.

Press the button on the steering wheel with the system interrupted:

With Steering Assistant.

Without Steering Assistant.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing over the Cruise Control mode

Switching Cruise Control without Distance Control off and on:

▷ Press and hold this button.

▷ Press and hold this button.

With Steering Assistant: switch on Distance Control:

Press the button.

Without Steering Assistant: switch on Distance Control:

▷ Press the button.

▷ Press the button.

After changing, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

▷ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.

▷ Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.

▷ No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Depending on vehicle equipment:

Icon	Description
	Vehicle icon white: No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	Green icon: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle in front is detected. Vehicle icon flashes green: Vehicle in front drove off.
	Gray icon: System interrupted.
	Icon flashes gray: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	Vehicle icon flashes red and a signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Assisted View

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 154.

Displays in the Head-up display

Set speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

Distance information

The icon is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Distance Control switched off.
- ▷ Display in the Head-up display selected.
  Head-Up Display, refer to page 140.
- ▷ Distance too short.
- ▷ Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

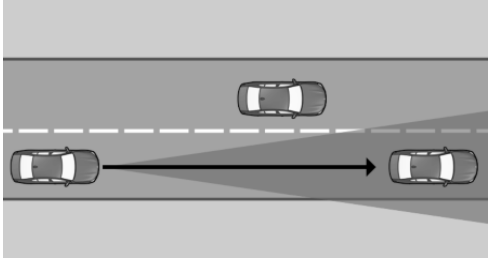
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 37.
- ▷ Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Detection range



The detection capability of the system and the automatic braking performance are limited.

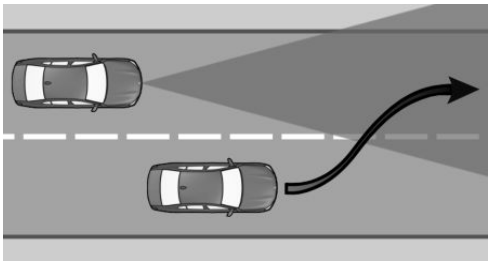
For instance, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment and national availability, for red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.

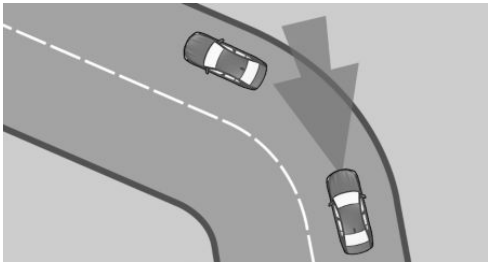
Merging vehicles



If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when

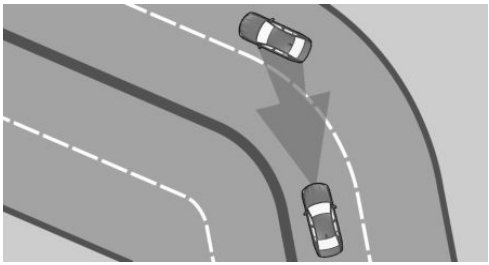
rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering



When the set speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate for it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▷ On steep uphill grades.
- ▷ In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer vehicle detection.
- ▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Drive power

The set speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Speed Limit Assistant

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant supports driving at the speed limit. A suggested speed can be applied.

General information

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- Manual Speed Limiter.
- Cruise control.
- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be activated.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
SET	Accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed, refer to Cruise Control.

Turning Speed Limit Assistant on/off

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. "Speed limits"
8. Select the desired setting:
   - "Adjust manually": detected speed limits can be applied manually.
   - "Show anticipation": Depending on the national-market version: current and upcoming speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being applied.
   - "Show current limit": current speed limits are displayed without being applied in the instrument cluster.
   - "Off": depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assistant will be turned off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster when the system and a driver assistance system are activated.

Icon	Function
ASSIST	Depending on the equipment version, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a speed control system: Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.
SPEED LIMIT 30	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
50 km/h	Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
SET	Indicator light illuminates green: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. After it has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually for the active driver assistance system.

SET When the SET icon lights up, press the button.

Speed adjustment

Principle

It can be adjusted whether the speed limit is applied exactly or with a tolerance.

General information

You can configure a speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set tolerance for the speed adaptation that affects all speeds.
   - ▷ "2nd adjustm. up to": activate or deactivate additional speed adaptation.
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": With additional speed adjustment activated, set the tolerance for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

Adapting to route

Principle

Depending on the national-market version, the system can be configured so that the vehicle adapts the speed automatically to the route.

For instance, the speed will be reduced in the following situations, if necessary:

- ▷ Before making turns.
- ▷ Before a roundabout.
- ▷ Before a curve.

Adapting speed automatically to route

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. "Adjust to route" or "Automatically adjust speed to route"

System limits

Speed Limit Assistant is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Consider the system limits of Speed Limit Info.

Upcoming speed limits can only be applied to Active Cruise Control with Distance Control.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the system may not respond at all or with restrictions to the route when the navigation system is unable to clearly identify the position of the vehicle.

Additional information:

- ▷ System limits of Speed Limit Information, refer to page 203.
- ▷ System limits of the sensors, refer to page 37.

Steering Assistant

Principle

The Steering Assistant helps keep the vehicle in the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when cornering.

General information

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane boundaries or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering Assistant with Traffic Jam Assistant on/off.
MODE	Switch function on.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windshield.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- ▷ Sufficient lane width.
- ▷ Above approx. 43 mph/70 km/h: Lane boundary on both sides is detected.
- ▷ Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: Lane boundary on both sides or vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- ▷ Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- ▷ Wide curves.
- ▷ Drive in the center of the lane.
- ▷ Turn signal switched off.

- The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- Cruise Control with Distance Control active.
- Seat belt on the driver's side fastened.
- Forward Collision Warning active.
- Pedestrian Warning active.
- Side Collision Warning active.

Turning Steering Assistant on/off

Assisted Driving Mode

General information

This button is used to switch the configured function on and off.

The button can be used to set the primarily used function.

Setting the function

When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the toolbar. The toolbar for Assisted Driving mode is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Icon	Function
	Cruise Control with Distance Control.
	Cruise Control with Distance Control and Steering Assistant.

The selected function is shown in green.

Turning on the system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2.

Adjust the Steering Assistant if necessary.

Steering wheel icon lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Steering wheel icon lights up green.

The system is active.

With the system switched on, the Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation system and the Side Collision Warning are activated.

Turning off the system

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

Stopping Steering Assistant automatically

The system interrupts the supporting steering movements automatically, for example in the following situations:

- At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- The driver applies the brakes.
- With strong steering intervention.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.

- ▷ If a lane boundary is not detected for a certain period of time and no vehicle is driving ahead.
- ▷ Active Cruise Control with distance control is stopped.
- ▷ The seat belt on the driver's side is unfastened.

Steering wheel icon lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Gray steering wheel icon: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel icon: The system is activated. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Yellow flashing steering wheel icon: Lane boundary driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel icon and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Depending on the national-market version: steering wheel icon flashes red or lights up red. A signal sounds: System is switching off.
	Yellow steering wheel icon: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel icon and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 154.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LED lights above the buttons illuminate analogously to the displays in the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Yellow: system interruption is imminent.
- ▷ Red: system will be deactivated.

The steering wheel displays can be switched on/off if required.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Light elements"

Displays in the Head-up display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- In construction areas.
- Depending on the equipment, with automatic formation of emergency lanes.
- Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane boundaries.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Assisted Driving Plus

Principle

Assisted Driving Plus supports the driver with vehicle control in traffic queues.

Supporting steering movements take place without the driver actively steering.

General information

The system uses the sensors of the Steering Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Federal, state, or local laws may differ, and the use of this function may be prohibited or limited. Before use, check federal, state, and local laws.

Additionally, the notices for the Steering Assistant apply.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page 218.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The functional requirements of the Steering Assistant are fulfilled.

  Functional requirements, refer to page 218.
- ▷ The Steering Assistant is active.
- ▷ The function is only available on certain street types, e.g. freeways.
- ▷ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists.
- ▷ Sufficient lane width.
- ▷ Lane markings and a vehicle driving ahead are detected.
- ▷ Speed below approx. 40 mph/60 km/h.
- ▷ The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is paying attention to the surrounding traffic.
- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.

Turning Assisted Driving Plus on

As soon as all functional requirements are met, Assisted Driving Plus will be displayed as an additional icon in the toolbar. The toolbar is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Select Assisted Driving Plus with the button on the steering wheel.

The icon for Assisted Driving Plus is shown in green.

Two green LED lights are illuminated on the steering wheel.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is shown in green.

The system begins to assist the driver with vehicle control.

Depending on vehicle equipment, this function can be enabled/disabled on the control display.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Assisted Driving Plus"

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
ASSIST PLUS	Indicator light green: system is active.
ASSIST PLUS READY	Indicator light white: system is ready.
ASSIST PLUS	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Alternative displays

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are displayed as follows:

Icon	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LED lights above the buttons illuminate analogously to the displays in the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Green: the system is active.
- ▷ Yellow: system will be interrupted.
- ▷ Red: system will be deactivated.

System limits

General information

The limits of the Steering Assistant system apply.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page 218.

Driver Attention Camera

The limits of the Driver Attention Camera system apply.

Additional information:

Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 196.

Automatic Lane Change Assistant

Principle

The Automatic Lane Change Assistant also assists when changing lanes on multi-lane roads.

General information

The system uses the sensors of the Steering Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the notices for the Steering Assistant apply.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page 218.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The functional requirements of the Steering Assistant are fulfilled.

  Functional requirements, refer to page 218.
- ▷ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic, such as crash barriers.
- ▷ Lane boundaries have been detected.
- ▷ Maximum speed approx. 110 mph/180 km/h.

- ▷ The minimum speed is country-specific.
- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.

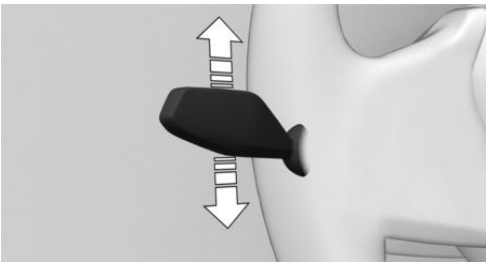
Turning on/turning off Automatic Lane Change Assistant

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Automatic Lane Change"

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. Press the turn signal lever in the required direction to the pressure point for signaling briefly.

   A supporting steering movement in the required direction can be detected a short time later.



After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Canceling a lane change

The lane change can be canceled by steering movement into the opposite direction.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Green steering wheel icon. Green arrow icon for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel icon. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on the national-market version: Green steering wheel icon. Gray arrow icon for lane-changing. Lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, information for the system is displayed in the Assisted View of the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 154.

Alternative displays

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are displayed as follows:

Icon	Description
	Green steering wheel icon. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. Green arrow icon for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel icon. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. No arrow icon for lane-changing on the display. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on the national-market version: Green steering wheel icon. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. Gray arrow icon for lane-changing. Lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

System limits

The limits of the Steering Assistant system apply.

Additional information:

Steering Assistant, refer to page 218.

Parking

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Parking assistance systems

General information

The parking assistance systems include different individual systems. The individual systems provide support with assistance functions, sensors and different camera views when parking and maneuvering or driving in reverse.

Additional information:

- Rearview camera, refer to page 230.
- Automatic camera perspective, refer to page 231.
- Side view, refer to page 231.
- 3D view, refer to page 232.
- Car wash view, refer to page 232.
- Panorama View, refer to page 232.
- Door opening angle, refer to page 234.
- Remote 3D View, refer to page 234.
- Park Distance Control, refer to page 235.
- Active Park Distance Control, refer to page 238.
- Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 239.
- Back-up Assistant, refer to page 243.

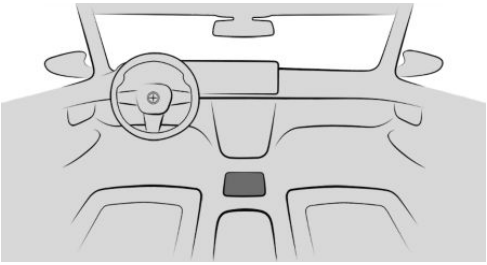
Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button

Panorama View

Sensors

The parking assistance systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

- ▷ Radar sensors, side, front.
- ▷ Radar sensors, side, rear.
- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Top view cameras.
- ▷ Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Operating concept

The camera-based individual systems are operated with the function bars on the control display. The camera views can be viewed by selecting the appropriate icon.

Some parking assistance systems can be set individually in the Park menu.

Calling up Park menu

Via Parking Assistant button

1. Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. Select the desired settings.

Via iDrive

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. Select the desired settings.

Display

Principle

The parking assistance systems view helps with parking and maneuvering by displaying the Park Distance Control and a variety of camera perspectives.

General information

Depending on the equipment, one or more cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Depending on national-market version, the automatic camera perspective or the rearview camera is displayed.

Turning display on/off

General information

The parking assistance systems view switches off automatically when driving forwards or if a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

With reverse

When drive readiness is switched on, the display is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged.

Via Parking Assistant button

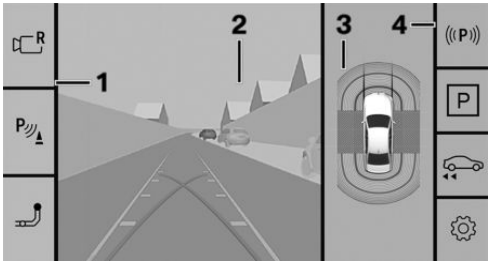
Press the button.

Display on the control display

General information

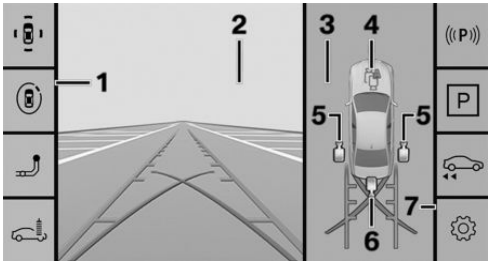
Depending on vehicle equipment and on the activated parking assistance system, the control display will vary.

Without Parking Assistant Plus



1 Toolbar, left
2 Camera image
3 Selection window
4 Toolbar, right

With Parking Assistant Plus



1 Toolbar, left
2 Camera image
3 Selection window
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Side view
6 Rearview camera
7 Toolbar, right

Toolbar, left

Different views can be selected using the left toolbar depending on vehicle equipment.

▷ "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

▷ "Only park. sensors"

The Park Distance Control view is displayed.

▷ "Parking"

The view of different camera perspectives is displayed.

▷ "3D view"

A three-dimensional visualization is displayed.

▷ "Car wash"

The display of your own lane can be turned on for easier driving into the car wash.

Toolbar, right

The parking assistance functions are displayed in the right toolbar. The display may vary depending on vehicle equipment.

▷ Status of the parking assistance systems.

▷ "Autom. Parking"

Functions of the Automatic Parking Assistant.

▷ "Back-Up Assistant"

Functions of the Back-up Assistant.

▷ "Settings"

Settings in the Park menu.

Status of parking assistance systems

The status of active parking assistance systems is indicated by icons in the right-hand toolbar.

Icon	Meaning
	No search for Automatic Parking Assistant offers. Automatic Parking Assistant has failed.
	Search for Automatic Parking Assistant offers is active.
	Automatic Parking Assistant: if the icon is green, the Automatic Parking Assistant is active. The system assumes vehicle control. Back-up Assistant: if the icon is green, the Back-up Assistant is active. The system takes over the steering.

Additional displays

General information

Additional displays can be shown in the camera image of the display of the parking assistance systems, e.g., parking aid lines, to make parking and maneuvering easier.

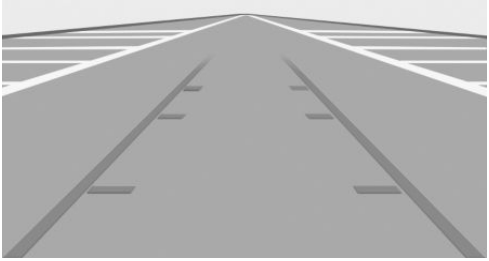
Turning additional displays on/off

Several additional displays can be activated at the same time.

Via Parking Assistant button

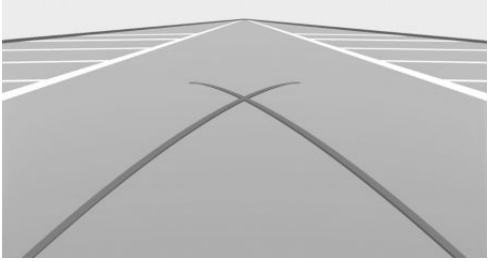
1. Enable the camera image.
2. "Settings"
3. Select the desired settings.

Parking aid lines



Pathway lines help estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

The pathway lines are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

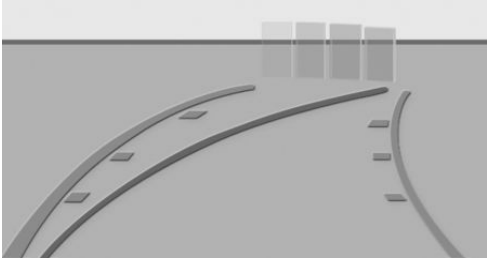
The lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Using parking aid lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



Obstacles are detected by the sensors.

The obstacles detected by the Park Distance Control are shown by marks in the camera image.

Colored gradients for the obstacle markings in green, yellow and red indicate the distances.

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With open cargo area.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Areas with gray hatching with an icon in the camera image identify areas that are currently not shown, such as an open door.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Due to its limits, the system may not react, or it may react too late or in a manner that is not consistent with normal use. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the objects on the control display.

Protruding cargo or a rear-mounted luggage rack can limit the detection range of the camera.

Malfunction

A camera failure is displayed on the Control Display.

The detection range of the failed camera is shown shaded on the control display.

Rearview camera

Principle

The rearview camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Additional views can be shown on the display, e.g., parking aid lines and obstacle markings.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The trunk is fully closed.
- ▷ The camera area is clean and clear.

Deactivated rearview camera

When the rearview camera is deactivated, for instance when the trunk is open, the camera image is displayed with gray shading.

Automatic camera perspective

Principle

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

General information

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front of or behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to side protection.

When the reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is exited if necessary and the rearview camera view is displayed. If necessary, select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will then be maintained for the current parking operation.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Side protection

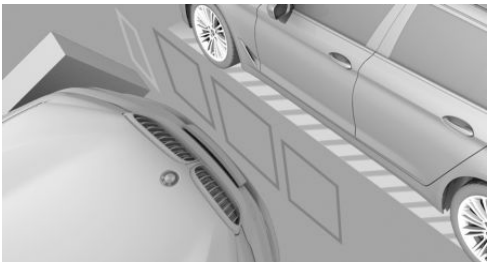
Principle

The side Park Distance Control is automatically displayed when the automatic camera perspective is turned on. The function shows obstacles located next to the vehicle.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- ▷ No marks: no obstacles were detected.
- ▷ Color marks: warning against detected obstacles.

System limits

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the marks are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Side view

Principle

The side view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or when other obstacles are on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

General information

The side view looks from rear to front and, in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

3D view

Principle

When 3D view is selected, a circle is displayed on the control display.

Specified perspectives can be selected on the circle.

General information

The current perspective is marked with a camera icon.

To exit the function, select another camera function in the left toolbar.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Car wash view

Principle

The car wash view helps when driving into a car wash.

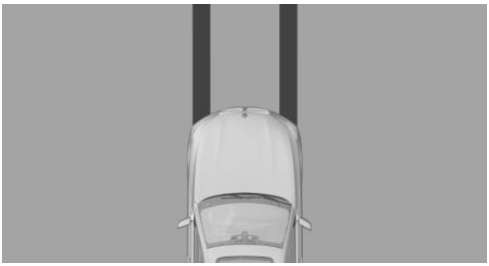
General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Turning the car wash view on/off

1. Press the button.
2. "Car wash"

Display



Your own lane is displayed for easier driving into a car wash.

Panorama View

Principle

The panoramic view gives you an earlier view of crossing traffic at blind driveway exits and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The front camera and the rearview camera capture the area around the side of the vehicle to improve the view.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the function can be used when driving forward or in reverse.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Sensors

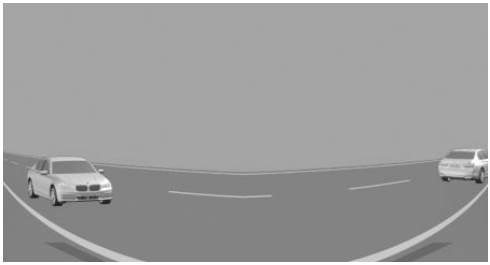
The system is controlled by the following cameras:

- ▷ Rearview camera.
- ▷ Front camera.

Turning the panoramic view on/off

Press the button.

Display



Yellow lines on the screen display identify the bumpers of your own vehicle.

Depending on the engaged selector lever position, the camera image of the rearview camera or front camera will be displayed.

Activation points

Principle

Positions at which panorama view should switch on automatically can be saved as activation points.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Depending on national-market version, the activation points can be used when driving forward or in reverse.

Follow instructions in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Functional requirements

- ▷ A GPS signal must be received.
- ▷ A BMW ID or driver profile must be enabled.
- ▷ The direction of travel, selector lever position, and vehicle angle must correspond to a stored activation point.

Storing activation points

1. Drive the vehicle to the position where the system should switch on and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. "Activation point"

   The current position is displayed.
4. "Save activation point"

Activation points are stored with one of the following pieces of information if possible:

- ▷ With the city/town.
- ▷ With the city/town and the street.
- ▷ With the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. "GPS-based"

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.

Editing activation points

1. Press the button.
2. "Manage points"
   A list of all activation points is displayed.
3. Select an activation point as needed.
4. Select the desired setting.

Door opening angle

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, the door opening angle indicator is displayed automatically.

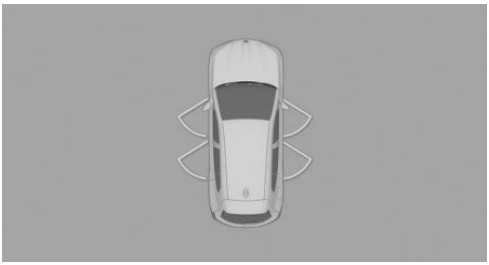
If obstacle marking is activated, the parking view indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching road users.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Display



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P.

System limits

The vehicle's surroundings are distorted in the display for technical reasons.

Even if the door opening angle indicator on the control display does not overlap with any other objects, it is necessary to park carefully next to other objects.

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Remote 3D View

Principle

The BMW app and the camera pictures in the parking view, such as automatic camera perspective, enable the display of the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile device.

The function displays a snapshot of the situation.

General information

For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following cameras:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Top view cameras.
- ▷ Rearview camera.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Data transfer must be activated.
  Data protection, refer to page 63.
- ▷ The BMW app must be installed on the mobile end device.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries: a BMW ID with an existing ConnectedDrive account must be activated.
  BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 64.

Activating/deactivating Remote 3D View

The function can be activated or deactivated individually or together with other functions.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

   After the activation, Remote 3D View can be accessed in the BMW app.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- With a door or the cargo area open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- With manually folded-in exterior mirrors.
- When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- The vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- In case of missing or weak Internet connection.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Acoustic and visual warnings signal obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle.

Obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors can also be reported.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is issued as early as a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to high speeds when the Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off quickly while Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Turning Park Distance Control on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ When drive readiness is turned on when engaging selector lever position R.
- ▷ While approaching detected obstacles if the speed is lower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

Turning off the system automatically

When driving forward, the system turns off automatically as needed when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Turning the system on/off manually

Press the button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

If the system is manually switched on when the reverse gear is engaged, the rearview camera image is displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the system cannot be turned off manually when the reverse gear is engaged.

Acoustic warning

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected at the rear left of the vehicle, a sound is heard from the rear left speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals of the intermittent tones.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, at a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating continuous tone will sound between the front and rear speakers.

The intermittent tones and the continuous tone are turned off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on national-market version, the intermittent tones are switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary, the acoustic signal is reactivated.

Adjusting the volume

The volume of the acoustic warning can be adjusted.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "PDC signal volume"
7. Set the desired value.

Visual warning

General information

The approach to an object is displayed on the control display as soon as the system is activated.

Objects that are farther away are already displayed before a signal sounds.

The detection range of the sensors is represented by shaded, ring-shaped surfaces. Green, yellow, and red markings indicate when obstacles are detected in the detection zone.

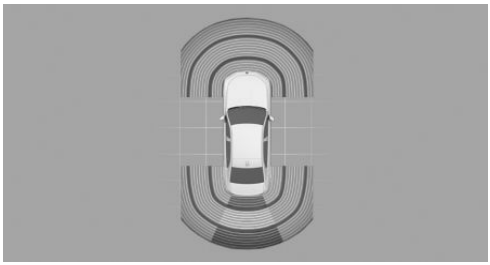
Depending on the view, pathway lines, turning circle lines and obstacle markings are shown for a better estimation of the space required.

When equipped with cross traffic warning: depending on vehicle equipment, a warning is also shown for vehicles approaching at the rear and front from the side.

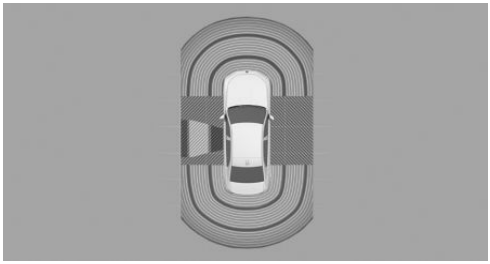
To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

Display

Depending on vehicle equipment, warnings may be displayed in front of, next to, and behind the vehicle.



View behind vehicle.



View next to vehicle.

- ▷ Shaded area: detection range of sensors.
- ▷ Gray shaded area: no obstacles were detected in the detection range.
- ▷ Colored marks in shaded area: obstacles were detected in the detection range.
- ▷ Shaded area interrupted: the area next to the vehicle has not yet been detected.

System limits

General information

The function for protecting the vehicle sides only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when passing by.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. When the vehicle is stationary, the gray shaded areas on the sides are hidden after a certain time. The area on the side of the vehicle must be newly captured.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Unwarranted warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause unwarranted warnings.

To prevent unwarranted warnings, for instance in car washes, turn off automatic Park Distance Control activation on obstacle detection.

Malfunction

An icon is displayed on the control display.

The detection range of the sensors is not displayed on the control display.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Park Distance Control malfunction. Have the system checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Active Park Distance Control

Principle

The Park Distance Control brake function initiates emergency braking if there is an acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

Pressing the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention. No emergency braking is performed.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Turning off Active Park Distance Control temporarily

After emergency braking, the function can be temporarily turned off on the control display.

1. "Obstacle detected. Emergency braking."
2. "Deactivate temporarily"

   During continued driving in this surrounding situation, no further emergency braking will occur.

The system will be turned on again automatically for the next drive.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"

4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "Active PDC emergency braking"
7. Select the desired setting.

Display

As soon as the system detects an obstacle, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Automatic Parking Assistant

Principle

The Automatic Parking Assistant helps you with parallel and perpendicular parking and makes driving out of parallel parking spaces easier.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

Information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle and if or when the function can be installed in the vehicle can be obtained from an authorized service center or other qualified service center.

Additional information:

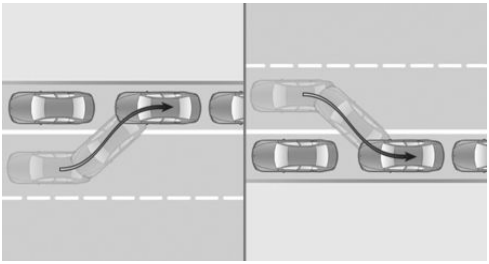
Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

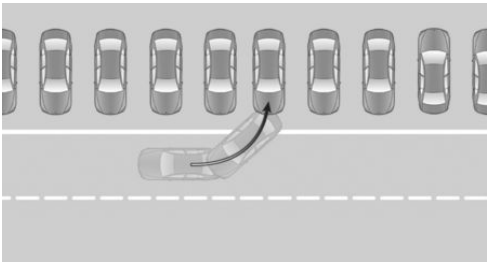
Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Parking methods

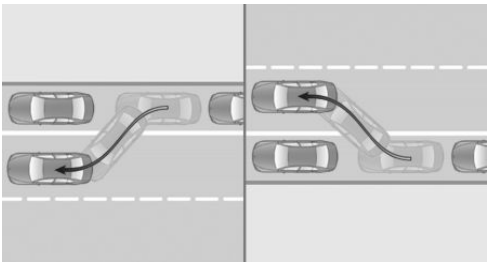
The system supports the following functions:



Reverse parking parallel to road, parallel parking.



Reverse parking perpendicular to the road, perpendicular parking.



Driving out of parallel parking spaces.

Operation

The operating principle and operation of the system is divided into the following steps:

- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Turning on.
- ▷ Parking.
- ▷ Driving out of parking spaces.

Parking space search is always active when the vehicle is slowly moving straight forward.

Ultrasonic sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

When the system is active, the status of the system and necessary instructions are displayed.

Parking operation

The system calculates the best possible option for driving in or out of parking spaces with parking lines and takes control of the following functions while parking:

- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Acceleration and braking.
- ▷ Changing gears.

The parking operation when pulling in is automatic.

When driving out of parallel parking spaces, the vehicle maneuvers automatically until it reaches a position where it can be driven out of the parking space without further steering movements.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ NOTICE

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The Automatic Parking Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Functional requirements

Measurement of parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- ▷ Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- ▷ Gap between two objects, each with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- ▷ Minimum length of adjoining objects approx. 3 ft/1 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Perpendicular parking:

- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

  The depth of perpendicular parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces.

Parking operation

- Doors and cargo area are closed.
- Driver's seat belt is fastened.

Leaving parking spaces

- The vehicle was parked using the Automatic Parking Assistant and an object is detected in the surrounding area of the vehicle.
- The vehicle was manually parked in reverse and objects in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle are detected. The distance to a detected curb is at least 6 inches/15 cm.
- The parking space is at least 2.6 ft/0.8 m longer than your vehicle.

Turning the Automatic Parking Assistant on/off

Via Parking Assistant button

Press the button.

The current status of the parking space search is displayed in the right toolbar.

With reverse

Engage selector lever position R.

The current status of the parking space search is displayed in the right toolbar.

Turning the signal tone on/off

The signal tone for suitable parking spaces can be turned on and off.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "Sound when available"

Signal tone of Park Distance Control

Depending on national-market version, an intermittent tone for Park Distance Control sounds during an automatic parking operation.

A continuous tone will sound when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm.

Parking space search

- Parking space search is always active when driving straight forward at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and a distance of max. 5 ft/1.5 m to parked vehicles.
- The Automatic Parking Assistant is switched on and parking space search is activated. Search for suitable parking spaces.
- Suitable parking spaces are displayed and an acoustic signal sounds.
- If a parallel or perpendicular parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts to the suitable parking method. If there are parking spaces for parallel or perpendicular parking, both parking spaces are shown on the control display. The parking direction can be selected by selecting the parking space.

Parking using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. Press the button or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

   Parking space search is activated.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display.
2. Select the suggested parking operation.

   Green: the system takes control of the parking operation.
3. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   At the end of the parking operation, selector lever position P is set.

   The end of the parking operation is indicated on the Control Display.
4. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Driving out of a parking space using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. With the vehicle at a standstill, press button or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
3. Select the desired direction for driving out of the parking space on the control display.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   Green: the system takes control of maneuvering.

   The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   A message will be displayed at the end of the maneuver.
5. Make sure that the traffic situation permits driving out of parking space and driving off as usual.

   The Automatic Parking Assistant is turned off automatically.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant manually

The Automatic Parking Assistant can be canceled manually at any time, e.g.:

- ▷ Press the button.
- ▷ While lightly pressing the accelerator pedal and simultaneously moving the steering wheel.
- ▷ Press accelerator pedal.

The Automatic Parking Assistant is canceled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▷ When operating the accelerator pedal or the selector lever.
- ▷ When setting the parking brake.
- ▷ When unfastening the driver's seat belt.
- ▷ With open cargo area.
- ▷ With open hood.
- ▷ With the doors open.
- ▷ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.

- When changing over to another function on the Control Display.
- When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- On snow-covered or slippery road.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- With insufficient distances, which are indicated by Park Distance Control.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.

When the system is automatically aborted, selector lever position P is engaged.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Continuing the parking operation

If parking or leaving a parking space has been interrupted, the operation can be continued, if needed.

Restart the Automatic Parking Assistant and follow the instructions on the control display.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

No parking assistance

The Automatic Parking Assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.
- For parking spaces that are only marked with lines on the ground. The system orients itself according to objects.
- For special parking lots such as pay parking lots with automatic locking mechanisms, coin parking or mechanical parking systems.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The Automatic Parking Assistant has malfunctioned. Have the system checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Back-up assistant

Principle

The Back-up Assistant assists when driving in reverse, for instance when driving out of tight or confusing parking or street situations.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

Information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle and if or when the function can be installed in the vehicle can be obtained from an authorized service center or other qualified service center.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

The vehicle stores the driving movements of the last distance covered. This stored distance can be driven in reverse with automated steering.

The system takes over the steering. The speed must be controlled by the driver using the accelerator pedal and the brake.

A maximum of 164 ft/50 m are stored.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

NOTICE

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Drive forward without interruption to store the distance covered.
- ▷ To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

Driving in reverse with automated steering

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. With the vehicle at a standstill, press button or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
3. "Back-Up Assistant"

   Follow the instructions on the Control Display where required.
4. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive in reverse with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

   Green: the system takes control of steering.

   When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle's surroundings.

   In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions for Park Distance Control.
5. Right before the end of the stored distance covered, a signal tone will sound and a message is displayed.

Stop no later than when normal road traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle, such as by shifting to forward gear.

Canceling the Back-up Assistant manually

The assisted reversing by the Back-up Assistant can be canceled manually:

- ▷ Via touchscreen: "Back-Up Assistant"
- ▷ Press the button.

Canceling the Back-up Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▷ When shifting from reverse to another selector lever position.
- ▷ During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- ▷ After an extended period of time when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ When exiting the stored lane when reversing, for instance with maximum steering-wheel angle.
- ▷ When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- ▷ In case of a slippery surface.
- ▷ When the vehicle is rolling, such as on a slope.
- ▷ In case of changed ambient conditions.
- ▷ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/9 km/h.

System limits

- ▷ The maximum speed when driving in reverse is limited to approx. 6 mph/9 km/h.

  A warning occurs at a speed of approx. 4 mph/7 km/h.

  If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function will be canceled.
- ▷ After driving a stored distance covered with major steering-wheel angles, the function of the system will be limited for the return trip.

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving the stored distance covered in reverse. For example, this includes the following factors:

- ▷ Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.
- ▷ The speed is not adapted to the distance covered.
- ▷ Road characteristics, such as gradients, inclines or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the route, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like weather.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its application range and thereby ensure the best possible driving experience.

Adaptive M chassis

Principle

The Adaptive M chassis is an intelligent, controllable sport chassis.

The chassis reduces body movements with a sporty driving style or on an uneven road.

General information

The intelligent control of the chassis increases the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road condition and driving style.

Setting

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to sporty driving.

The shock absorbers are adjusted depending on the selected driving mode as well as the road condition and driving style.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 129.

Performance Control

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, wheels are braked individually when a sporty driving style is used.

Drive sound

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the drive sound can be adjusted.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "IconicSounds"
6. Select the desired setting.

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Air conditioning control

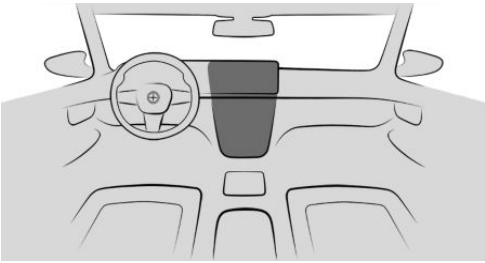
Overview

Functions via climate control menu

Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic program.
72.0°F	Temperature.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
A	Automatic recirculated-air control.
	Fresh air.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Seat heating.

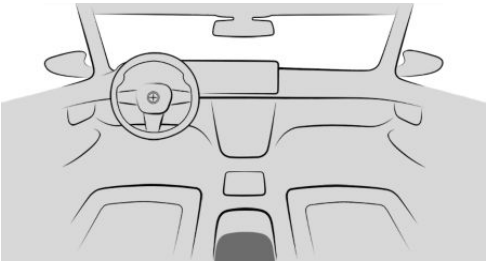
The functions can also be operated via voice, such as Temperature.

Buttons, automatic climate control



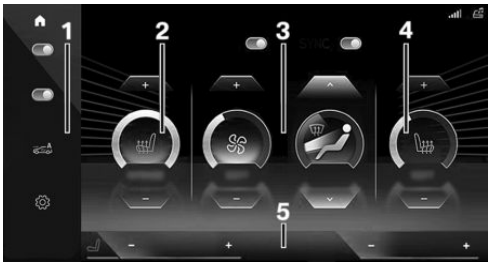
Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.

Buttons, rear automatic climate control



Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic program.
▼ ▲	Temperature.
	Air distribution.
	Seat heating.
OFF	Switching off.

View on the control display



1 Toolbar
2 Climate control functions, driver's side
3 Climate control functions
4 Climate control functions, passenger's side
5 Climate control bar

Calling up climate control functions

Via climate control bar:

"CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.

Or:

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Climate control"

Turning the air conditioning system on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "All climate functions"
3. Select the desired setting.

The complete air conditioning system is turned on/off with the last settings.

When the air conditioning system is turned on, individual climate control functions can be turned off.

Turning rear automatic climate control on/off

Functional requirements

▷ Automatic climate control is turned on.
▷ Defrost function is deactivated.

Turning rear automatic climate control on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Rear climate control"
4. Activating/deactivating"Rear climate control".

The rear automatic climate control can be activated with standard setting for temperature and AUTO program:

"Activate with default settings"

Switching on using the button

Press one of the following buttons:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Automatic program.
- ▷ Air distribution, manual.

Switching off using the button

OFF Press the button.

Locking the rear automatic climate control operating elements

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Rear climate control"
4. "Lock rear climate control"

Automatic program

Principle

The automatic program ensures a comfortable climate, which can be modified with the desired temperature and individual settings.

The automatic program cools, ventilates or heats the vehicle interior automatically.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the automatic program provides the best possible settings for climate control functions depending on the outside temperature, interior temperature, sunlight, seat occupancy and the desired temperature setting:

- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Seat heating.

The automatic program takes seat occupancy into account, regulating the climate in an energy-efficient manner that is tailored to the occupants.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the automatic program in order to prevent window condensation to the extent possible.

Turning the automatic program on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Automatic program"
3. Select the desired setting.

Switching the rear climate control automatic program on/off

Using the button

AUTO Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the automatic program is turned on.

Setting the intensity

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of individual climate control functions can be individually adjusted.

Each climate control function has multiple levels that can be adjusted individually, such as:

- ▷ "LOW"
- ▷ "MEDIUM"
- ▷ "HIGH"

Each level has a specific control range of the intensity.

Based on the stored data models, the intensities are dynamically adjusted while driving. It is not necessary to manually change the desired intensity to lower or higher levels while driving.

Example of function

When the automatic program is turned on, the intensity of the seat heating can be adjusted:

1. "CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.
2. Seat heating.
3. Select desired setting, for example, "HIGH".

The individually selected settings of the climate control functions are stored and automatically set up again, such as after the vehicle is started again.

Display

The indicator in the climate control bar provides information about the temperature difference between the configured desired temperature and current interior temperature.

- ▷ The red or blue bar next to the temperature display indicates the progress of heating or cooling.
- ▷ The desired interior temperature is reached as soon as the bar is no longer displayed.

Active climate control functions such as seat heating are displayed as icons in the climate control bar.

Active climate control functions are highlighted in color in the climate control menu.

Temperature

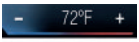
Principle

The automatic climate control cools or heats to the configured temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.

General information

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Setting the temperature



The temperature can be set individually for driver and front passenger in the air conditioning bar.

Set the desired temperature:

- ▷ + Raise the temperature.
- ▷ — Lower temperature.

Configuring the temperature adjustment

When the automatic program is switched on, the heating and cooling speed can be adjusted as follows:

- ▷ "BALANCED".

  This setting enables a smooth, low-noise adjustment of the interior temperature.
- ▷ "DYNAMIC".

  The setting enables a quick adjustment of the interior temperature with a high air volume.

Setting the rear automatic climate control temperature

Via iDrive

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Rear climate control"
4. Set the desired temperature.

Using the button

Press the left or right button side to set the desired temperature.

Adjusting the upper body temperature

General information

The air temperature in the upper body area can be adjusted.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjusting the upper body temperature

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Temp. adjustment upper body"
4. Increase or decrease temperature.

Air conditioning

Principle

The air in the interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Functional requirement

Standby or drive readiness is switched on.

Switching the cooling function on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "A/C"
3. Select the desired setting.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

When using the cooling mode, condensation that will exit below the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Principle

The function enables a quick and intense cooling of the interior.

General information

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Rear automatic climate control:

The function is automatically activated in the rear when the SYNC program is turned on.

Functional requirement

The function is available at an outside temperature above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Turning maximum cooling on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "MAX A/C"
3. Select the desired setting.

Air flows out of the air vents to the upper body area. Open the vents.

Air recirculation mode

Principle

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the interior air.

General information

If there is window condensation, turn off the air recirculation.

When the air recirculation is turned off, outside air is directed into the interior.

In the automatic recirculated-air control, outside air is drawn in or the interior air is circulated, depending on the outside air quality.

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Turning air recirculation on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. The current operating mode is displayed in the toolbar. Select the desired setting in the toolbar:
   - ▷ "Air recirculation"
   - ▷ "Fresh air"
   - ▷ "Auto air recirculation"

Depending on vehicle equipment, air recirculation will turn off automatically based on ambient conditions in order to prevent window condensation.

Air flow

General information

The air flow generated by the blower can be adjusted as needed.

Adjusting the air flow

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. Air flow.
3. Select the desired setting.

The air flow may be reduced to preserve the vehicle battery.

Adjusting the air volume of the rear climate control

Pressing the upper or lower side of the button repeatedly: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the climate control display.

Air distribution settings

General information

The air distribution can be adjusted as required in manual mode.

Adjusting the air distribution

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. Air distribution.
3. Select the desired setting.

The selected air distribution is displayed.

Adjusting the air distribution of the rear climate control

Press the button repeatedly. Select the desired setting.

The selected air distribution is shown on the climate control display.

SYNC program

Principle

When the SYNC program is activated, the settings for the driver's side can be transferred to the passenger's side and to the rear.

General information

The following settings can be transferred:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ Automatic program.

Turning the SYNC program on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "SYNC"
3. Select the desired setting.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

Defrost function

Principle

With the defrost function, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

General information

The air flow and air temperature are automatically optimized for the removal of ice and condensation.

The air distribution is directed toward the windshield and the front side windows.

If there is window condensation, turn on the automatic program to take advantage of the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

When the defrost function is turned on, the rear automatic climate control is deactivated to provide maximum performance.

Turning the defrost function on/off

Press the button.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

Rear window defroster

Principle

With the rear window defroster, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the rear window.

Functional requirement

Standby or drive readiness is switched on.

Turning the rear window defroster on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with rear window defroster switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Seat heating

General information

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the functions are turned on automatically with the temperature that was last set.

Additional information:

Automatic program, refer to page 249.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Turning the seat heating on/off

1. "CLIMATE MENU" tap in the center of the climate control bar.
2. Seat heating.
3. Select the desired setting.

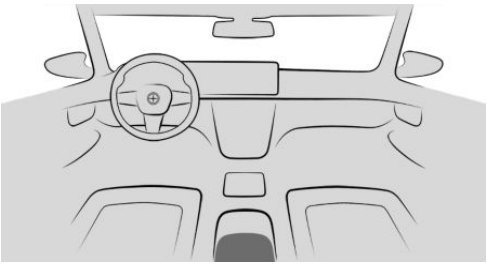
When ECO PRO is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 282.

Rear automatic climate control

Overview



Switching on the seat heating

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Turning off the seat heating

Press and hold the button until the LEDs turn off.

Ventilation

Principle

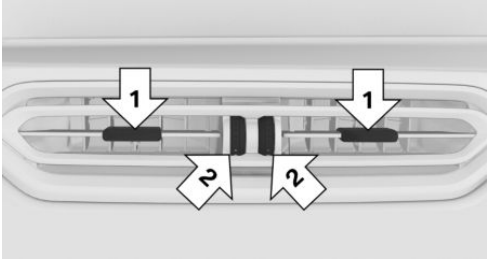
The ventilation system offers individual ranges of adjustment for direct or indirect ventilation to optimize the air flows in the vehicle.

General information

Open the air vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

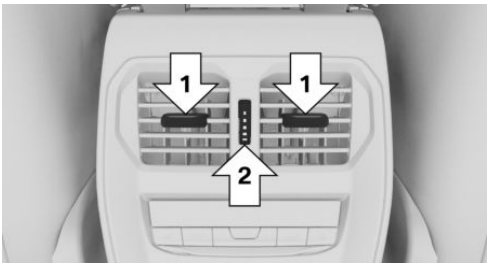
The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the set desired temperature.

Front ventilation



- ▷ Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for the variable adjustment of the air flow on the vents, arrows 2.

Ventilation in the rear



- ▷ Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the air vents, arrow 2.

Setting the ventilation

Depending on the desired ventilation, align the air flow directly or indirectly toward the passengers.

Air quality

General information

The air quality in the interior is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Interior filter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.
- Pre-ventilation.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Dust and pollen is filtered out from the inflowing air.
- Nano-particle emissions are reduced.
- Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- Microbial particles, viruses and allergens are filtered.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the interior filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Pre-ventilation

Principle

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the pre-ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the outside temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

  If pre-ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- Time and date are set correctly.
- The ventilation air vents are open.

Switching pre-ventilation on/off

Turning on/turning off via iDrive

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. Select the desired setting.

Departure time

General information

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Setting the departure time

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the desired departure time.
7. Select day of the week, if needed.

Activating the departure time

To turn on the pre-ventilation prior to a departure time, the respective departure time must be activated beforehand.

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

Icon	Description
	Icon in the center console at the top. Icon lights up: a departure time is activated. Icon flashes: Pre-ventilation is switched on.

Activating with BMW app

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a suitable BMW app with remote functionality can be used to turn on the pre-ventilation at a preset departure time or immediately.

Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start

Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or heats the car's interior prior to start of the trip to a comfortable temperature. The system automatically cools, vents, and heats depending on the interior, external, and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

The system starts the engine automatically and allows it to run for a limited period of time.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on stationary climate control in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

Warning

When stationary climate control is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during stationary climate control operation, e.g. leaves,

grass, gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- Battery is sufficiently charged.
- The fuel tank capacity is sufficient.
- Hood is closed.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Air vents are opened.

Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system. Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to climatize the car's interior.

Via iDrive:

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Remote Engine Start"
5. "Start engine for climate cont."
6. Confirm the disclaimer.

Turning on/turning off the pre-conditioning

General information

The system switches off automatically after max. 15 minutes for safety reasons.

The system can be switched on a maximum of two times in a row.

The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Switching on via iDrive

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Start now"

Switching on/off via vehicle key

The system can be switched on and off using the vehicle key.

Press the button on the vehicle key three times within 1 second.

After operating the vehicle key, it will take approximately 3 seconds until the engine is switched on.

To switch off the system, press the button again three times.

Switching off with the Start/Stop button

The system can be switched off directly as follows: pressing the Start/Stop button, without operating the brake pedal.

Climate control for departure time

General information

Scheduled departure times can be set up in the system to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time of the scheduled departure can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week of the scheduled departure can be set.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

The system is activated automatically a few minutes before the set departure time. The system remains switched on for a short time after the set departure time.

For safety reasons, the air conditioning can only be activated once for the departure time.

The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle.

Additional information:

For Your Own Safety, refer to page 8.

Setting the departure time

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.

Activating the departure time

1. "CLIMATE MENU"
2. "Settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

In the instrument cluster:

The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

Icon	Description
	Icon in the center console at the top. Icon lights up: heating operation is switched on.
	Icon in the center console at the top. Icon lights up: a departure time is activated. Icon flashes: pre-conditioning is switched on.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The activation of the system is confirmed by flashing twice.

The parking lights are switched on as long as the system is switched on.

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Integrated universal remote control

Principle

The integrated universal remote control in the interior mirror can operate remote-controlled systems such as garage door openers, alarm systems or locking systems.

General information

The integrated universal remote control replaces up to three different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information for the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

If this icon is printed on the packaging or in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- ▷ An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions.

Control elements on the interior mirror

- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ Hand-held transmitter of the remote-controlled system, arrow 3.

Programming the integrated universal remote control

Functional requirement

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

Programming individual buttons

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Turn on standby state.
3. Select desired button on the interior mirror:
   - ▷ Program available button:

     Press the button.
   - ▷ Program already assigned button:

     Press and hold the button for approx. 20 seconds.

   The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the remote-controlled system approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror.

   The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can illuminate in different ways:
   - ▷ The LED lights up green: programming completed.

     Release button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes green rapidly: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press and hold the button on the interior mirror for approx. 2 seconds. Perform this procedure three times.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for rolling code radio systems.
   - ▷ LED does not illuminate green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Refer to information on synchronization in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system.

1. Program the desired button on the interior mirror.
2. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the remote-controlled system, such as on the garage door.

   You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.

   Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.
3. Press and hold the programmed button on the interior mirror for approx. 3 seconds.

   If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to end synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Operation

After programming, the remote-controlled system can be operated with the button on the interior mirror.

Press and hold the desired button of the remote-controlled system within range until the function is triggered.

The LED on the interior mirror is continuously illuminated green during the transmission of the radio signal.

Deleting a button assignment

The button assignment cannot be deleted individually.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly.

All stored button assignments will be deleted.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding the sun visor out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Detach it from the holder and swing it toward the side window.
3. Shift it back to the desired position.

Folding the sun visor in

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when the standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

NOTICE

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

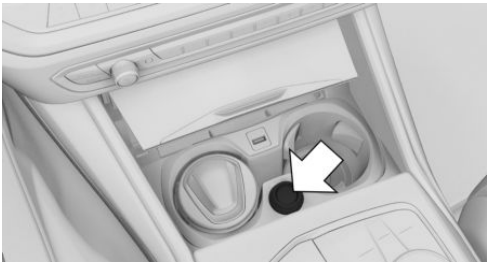
NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Insert the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

1. Press on the cover.

2. A socket is located between the cup holders. Detach the cover.



USB port

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

In the center armrest

A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

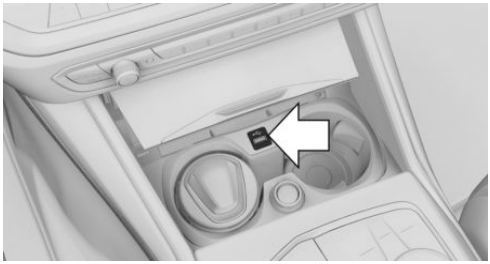
- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 3 A.

In the front center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

Press on the cover.



A USB port is located in the center console.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port Type A.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- ▷ Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

Depending on the equipment, there are two USB ports in the center console in the rear.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port Type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The wireless charging tray allows wireless charging of mobile phones and other mobile devices certified according to the Qi standard.

General information

When inserting the device to be charged, ensure that there are no objects between the device to be charged and the wireless charging tray.

((⚡)) The charging process is shown by the charge indicator on the control display.

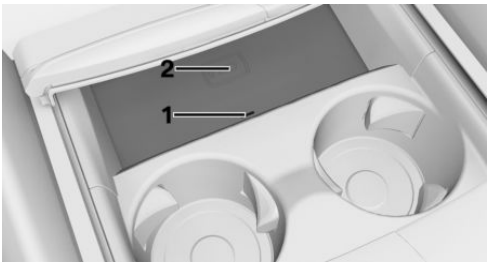
Safety information

⚠ Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



1 LED

2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- The device to be charged must be certified according to the Qi standard.
- Standby state is switched on.
- The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.
- Use only protective sleeves and covers up to a maximum thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm; otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray. The mobile phone display is pointing upwards.

Inserting the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature of the mobile phone may be too high or foreign object may be in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

A warning can be given if a Qi-certified mobile phone was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating forgotten warning function

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. "Mobile phone reminder"

System limits

The charge current may be reduced or the charging process may be temporarily interrupted in the following situations:

- Due to excessive temperatures on the surface of the tray and mobile phone.
- If there are objects between the mobile phone and the wireless charging tray.
- By settings on the mobile phone, for instance for charging. Follow the relevant instructions on the control display and in the instructions for the mobile phone, if applicable.

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Safety information

Warning

Devices connected to the vehicle via a cable, such as mobile phones or loose objects, can be thrown through the vehicle interior while driving, such as in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening the glove compartment

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing the glove compartment

Fold the lid closed.

Locking the glove compartment

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the integrated key, for instance when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 70.

Fold-out compartment

Safety information

Warning

The open fold-out compartment protrudes into the vehicle interior. Objects in the fold-out compartment can be thrown into the vehicle interior during the trip, for instance, in the event of an accident or braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the fold-out compartment immediately after using it.

Opening the fold-out compartment

Pull the handle.

Storage compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage tray in center console

Opening the storage compartment

Press on the cover.

Closing the storage compartment

Pull the cover on the handle back.

Front center armrest

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening the center armrest

Press the button.

Closing the center armrest

Press the lid down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening the cup holder

Press on the cover.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing the cup holder

Pull the cover on the handle back.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight,

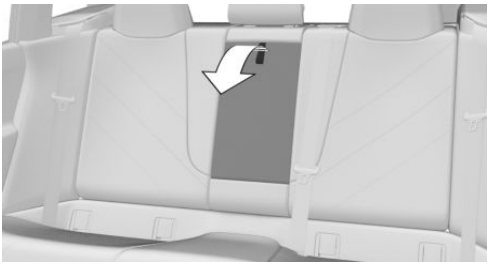
shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

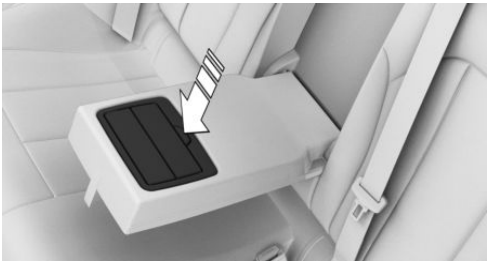
With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening the cup holder

1. Fold down the center armrest.



2. Press the button to open the cup holder.



Closing the cup holder

Press both covers back inward in sequence and fold the center armrest back.

Coat hooks

General information

The coat hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the coat hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the coat hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the coat hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the coat hooks.

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross vehicle weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden tire pressure loss. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing directional stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load-carrying capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.

Warning

Devices connected to the vehicle via a cable, such as mobile phones or loose objects, can be thrown through the vehicle interior while driving, such as in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can slip and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

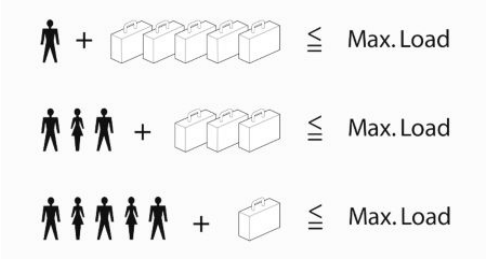
Steps for determining correct load limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the

available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Payload



The maximum payload is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer seat belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment, use the cargo area partition net to protect occupants. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate the cargo area partition net.
- ▷ Small and light cargo: secure with luggage straps or, depending on the equipment, with a cargo net or draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

Attach auxiliary materials to secure the cargo such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps, or cargo nets to the lashing eyes.

Overview

The lashing eyes are located in the luggage compartment.

Multifunction hook

General information

A multifunction hook is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multifunction hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects from the multifunction hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

Net

Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Storage compartment on the right side

A storage compartment is available on the right side of the cargo area.

Storage compartment on the left side

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Cargo floor panel

General information

There is a storage compartment under the cargo area floor.

Opening the storage compartment

Fold up the cargo area floor.

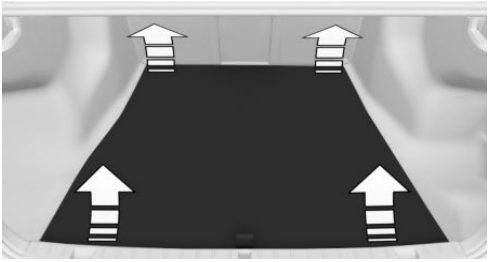
With emergency wheel: Enlarging the trunk

Principle

The emergency wheel and any related components can be temporarily removed to enlarge the cargo area.

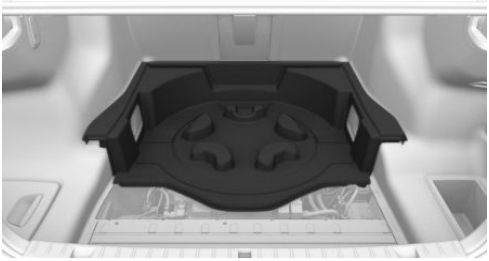
Removing the emergency wheel and the storage compartments

1. To remove the cargo area floor, pull it upward directly behind the rear backrests.



2. Remove tool holder and emergency wheel, refer to page 319.
3. Loosen the luggage strap from the lashing eyes.
4. Remove the storage compartment.

5. Remove the storage tray.



6. Insert the cargo floor panel.

Inserting the emergency wheel and the storage compartments

Proceed in reverse order to insert the emergency wheel and the storage compartments.

Through-loading system

Principle

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The right rear seat backrest and the center section can be folded down separately. The left rear seat backrest can be folded down together with the center section.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the cargo area. The center section can be separately folded down from the rear.

Safety information

Warning

There is a danger of jamming with folding down the rear seat backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

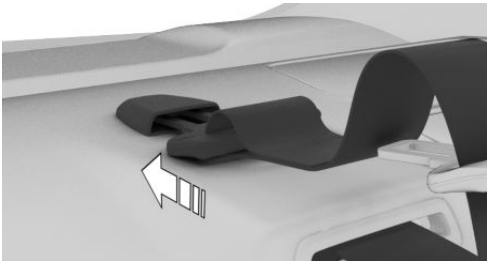
NOTICE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

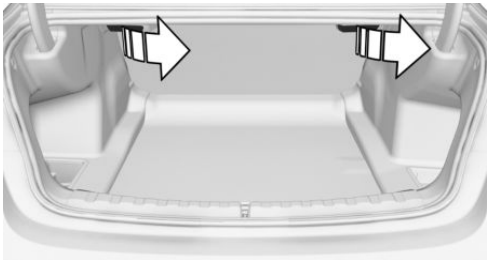
Folding down the rear seat backrest

From the cargo area

1. Unlock the belt lock of the center seat belt in the rear using the buckle tongue of another seat belt.
2. Insert the buckle tongue at the end of the belt into the specially designated fixture on the rear shelf.



3. Push the corresponding head restraint down as far as it will go.
4. Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest. The unlocked rear seat backrest moves forward slightly.



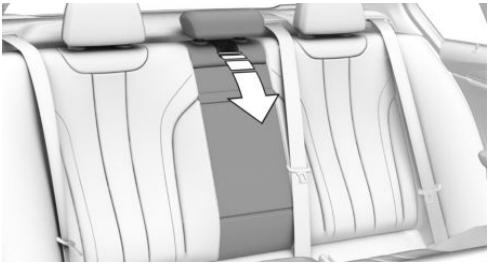
5. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Folding back the backrest

1. Return the rear seat backrest to the upright seat position and engage it.
2. Release the buckle tongue from the fixture on the rear shelf.
3. Insert the buckle tongue in the belt lock of the center seat belt. Make sure you hear the buckle tongue engage.

Folding down middle section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Pull lever and fold the center section forward.



Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Break-in procedures

General information

Moving parts need to work together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- ▷ For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full throttle or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake disks and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again if components mentioned above are replaced.

General driving notes

Closing the trunk lid

Safety information

Warning

An open trunk lid protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the trunk lid open.

Driving with the trunk lid open

If the vehicle still needs to be driven with the trunk lid open:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the blower output.
- ▷ Drive moderately.
- ▷ Fasten the trunk lid, e.g., with a tensioning belt.

Hot exhaust system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe.

Warning

If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard.

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts while driving, in Neutral or during parking.

Exhaust gas particulate filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particulate filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particulate filter as necessary.

General information

During several minutes of cleaning the following may occur:

- ▷ Temporarily, the engine may run less smoothly.
- ▷ A somewhat higher RPM is necessary to reach usual power development.
- ▷ A slight smoke formation coming from the exhaust system, even after the engine is switched off.
- ▷ Noises, such as those caused by the radiator fan running, even several minutes after the engine is switched off.

Overrun of the radiator fan for several minutes is normal even after short trips.

Climate comfort laminated safety glass

The vehicle glazing provides full protection against the harmful effects of ultraviolet radiation on the skin. In addition, vehicle glazing reduces heat radiation and prevents the interior from becoming too hot.

Mobile radio in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile communication devices. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior only use mobile communication devices, such as mobile phones, with a direct connection to an external antenna or the Personal eSIM in order to prevent mutual interference and to deflect radiation from the vehicle interior.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as aquaplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- ▷ Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- ▷ Drive through calm water only.
- ▷ Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- ▷ Drive through water at a maximum of walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through deep water, the water can penetrate the engine compartment, the electrical system, or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System as a standard feature.

Perform emergency braking in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering movement.

The pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake disks can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the travel path of the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several

floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

In case of wet roads, exposure to road salt or in heavy rain, gently depress the brake pedal every few kilometers.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated during braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way the brake force will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat and reduce braking effect.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by downshifting, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Depending on vehicle equipment, change gear using the shift paddle or selector lever position D/L.

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake system failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may not be available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

Brake disk corrosion

Corrosion on the brake disks and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended stationary periods.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake disks will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes when braking slowly - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Roof-mounted luggage racks are available as optional accessories.

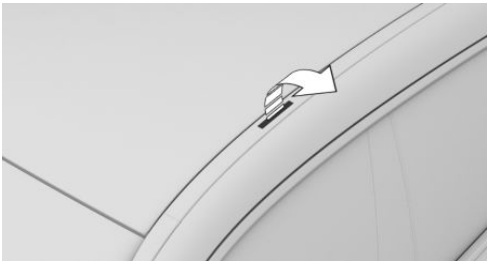
Safety information

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Roof strip with flaps

The mounting points are located in the roof strip above the doors.



Fold the cover outward.

Installation

Follow the assembly instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle weights and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using luggage straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the swiveling range of the trunk lid.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid driving off and braking with jerky movements or fast cornering.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motorsport-like competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motorsport-like competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. Use of the vehicle in M Sport or motor sport type competition is an improper use of the vehicle and may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the "New Vehicle Limited Warranty" Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Have vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop before and after driving on a racetrack.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental pollution.

Removing unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Removing attached parts following use

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Closing windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased drag and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can have different effects on the consumption values, consumption can be influenced by the tire size, for example.

Checking the tire pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire pressure increases rolling resistance and thus fuel consumption and tire wear.

Additional information:

Tire pressure specifications, refer to page 290.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate RPM.

This is the fastest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Anticipatory driving

A smooth and anticipatory driving style reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Maintain a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Avoid high RPM

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

Using coasting/overrun mode

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The fuel supply is interrupted in coasting/overrun mode.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic jam.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of an engine stop.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switching off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city traffic and with stop-and-go driving.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The ECO PRO driving mode supports the energy-saving use of comfort features. These functions are automatically deactivated, either partially or completely.

Having maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

Also refer to BMW Maintenance System.

ECO PRO

Principle

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

When certain prerequisites are met the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling in Neutral to reduce consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive information, ECO PRO tips, are displayed to assist with an efficient driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.

Steptronic transmission: Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in selector lever position D. The vehicle continues traveling in Neutral to reduce consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

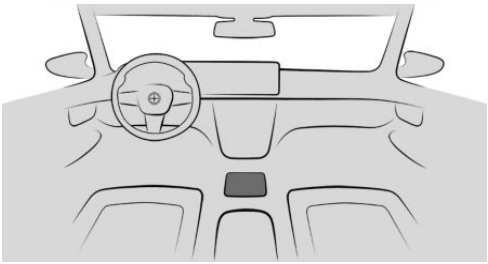
General information

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ▷ ECO PRO bonus range.
- ▷ ECO PRO seat climate control.
- ▷ ECO PRO climate control.
- ▷ ECO PRO view.
- ▷ Driving style analysis.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



ECO PRO ECO PRO

Selecting the driving mode

ECO PRO Press the button. ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Via iDrive

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
6. Select the desired setting.

Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

- ▷ ECO PRO seat heating.
- ▷ ECO PRO climate control.
- ▷ ECO PRO light.

ECO PRO seat climate control

The activation of ECO PRO will reduce the output of the seat heating.

ECO PRO climate control

Climate control is set to be efficient.

This means that it is possible to deviate slightly from the set temperature or to heat or cool down the car's interior more slowly to economize on consumption.

ECO PRO light

The output of exterior mirror heating and rear window defroster is reduced.

Depending on the equipment version, the dynamic ECO lighting function is activated in addition.

Resetting the settings

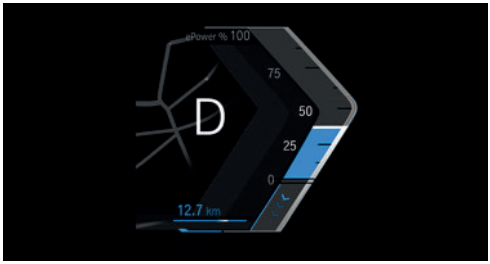
1. ECO PRO Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. "Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Using ECO PRO efficiently

Optimizing driving style

Power gauge

When ECO PRO driving mode is activated, the display switches to a special configuration.



When driving efficiently, the power gauge is colored blue.

The display will change to gray if the driving style is inefficient.

Activate adaptive recuperative braking for efficient driving.

Display in case of inefficient driving style

When driving above the efficient range, an arrow will be displayed.

For instance, this is displayed for the following situations:

- ▷ Excessive acceleration.
- ▷ Excessive speed.

In addition, a notice to coast in advance is displayed.

Driving style analysis

Principle

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

General information

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adjusting your driving style.

The current trip is analyzed.

This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement

This function is available in ECO PRO driving mode.

Calling up the efficiency evaluation

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Live Vehicle"

Additional information:

Live Vehicle, refer to page 139

Display on the control display

The display of the efficiency analysis shows the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the larger the area that is displayed in color and the faster the bonus range increases.

In contrast, a reduced area will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

Adaptive recuperation

Principle

The adaptive recuperation supports an adaptive and comfort-oriented driving style.

Various sensors analyze the current driving situation, e.g., the distance to the vehicle in front.

General information

Adaptive recuperation is available depending on the equipment and national-market version.

The system decides based on the situation if energy is recovered through recuperation or if the vehicle is to coast.

In vehicles with mild hybrid technology, the power of recuperation is adaptive, which causes the vehicle to decelerate to varying degrees when coasting.

Functional requirements

The system active under the following conditions:

- ▷ Brake pedal not depressed.
- ▷ Accelerator pedal not operated.

- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode is activated.
- ▷ DSC Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

Activating/deactivating adaptive recuperation

Adaptive recuperation is deactivated in the following situations:

- ▷ By activating driving mode: "SPORT".

SPORT Press the button.

Adaptive recuperation is activated when changing to another driving mode.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

Adaptive recuperation can be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 149.

Display on the control display

The adaptive recuperation can be displayed on the control display.

Additional information:

Current driving condition, refer to page 157.

Engine off/coasting

Principle

The drive system allows the vehicle to roll freely with minimal deceleration in selector lever position D. This driving condition is referred to as coasting. This reduces fuel consumption.

Vehicles with mild hybrid technology do not consume fuel when coasting.

General information

A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the efficient effect of coasting.

Coasting is automatically adapted to the respective driving situation.

The coasting mode is displayed in the Live Vehicle menu as efficient coasting.

Additional information:

Live Vehicle, refer to page 139.

Exemplary driving situations

If a route can be traveled without an anticipated need for braking, it is advantageous to roll.

The following exemplary driving situations may be suitable:

- ▷ Rolling on a straight downhill route without obstacles.
- ▷ Coasting on a distance without obstacles.

Avoid late or strong braking.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Selector lever position D is engaged.
- ▷ Brake is not depressed.
- ▷ Accelerator pedal is not operated.
- ▷ Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.

The function is available in the speed range from approx. 16 mph/25 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h.

Operation via shift paddles

Principle

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the Coasting mode can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

Long press the right shift paddle to activate.

To deactivate, actuate the left shift paddle.

System limits

- While Active Cruise Control is active.
- With defective, dirty or covered sensors.
- Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, hook the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the filler nozzle during refueling causes:

- ▷ Premature switching off.
- ▷ Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may light up.

Follow safety regulations posted at the filling station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 323.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Refuel promptly.

⚠ NOTICE

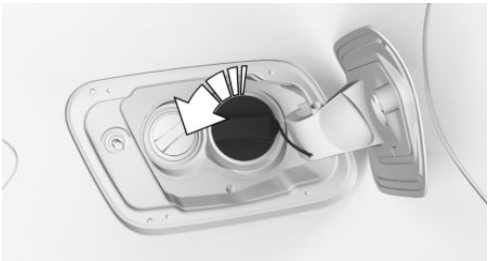
Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Avoid overfilling.

Fuel cap

Opening

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the fuel cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical malfunction.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Tire pressure

General information

The tire condition and tire pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Driving safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 290, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum speed for driving.

On the control display

The current tire inflation pressure values and the intended tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire inflation pressure value is located in the lower area of the control display.

Checking the tire pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent tire pressure loss.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.

3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

▷ A distance traveled of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.

▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least two hours after a trip.

If equipped with an emergency wheel: check the tire pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly and correct if necessary.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
6. Correct the tire pressure of a tire if the current tire pressure deviates from the intended tire pressure.

The display of the current tire pressure may be limited when the vehicle is stationary. After a short drive, the tire pressure is updated.

After correcting the tire pressure

If equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made. With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

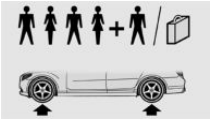
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

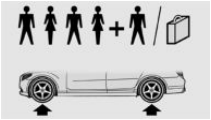
Tire pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

330i, 330i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 98 H XL M+S	2.3 / 33	2.4 / 35

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
225/45 R 18 95 H XL A/S 225/45 R 18 95 H XL M+S	2.3 / 33	2.6 / 38
225/40 R 19 93 H XL A/S	2.5 / 36	2.9 / 42
Front: 225/45 R 18 95 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 255/40 R 18 99 Y XL	-	2.3 / 33
Front: 225/40 R 19 93 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 255/35 R 19 96 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 225/45 R 18 95 V XL M+S	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 255/40 R 18 99 V XL M+S	-	2.3 / 33
Front: 225/40 R 19 93 H XL M+S	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 255/35 R 19 96 H XL M+S	-	2.6 / 38
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

M340i, M340i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 98 H XL M+S	2.3 / 33	2.5 / 36
225/45 R 18 95 H XL A/S 225/45 R 18 95 H XL M+S	2.5 / 36	2.8 / 41
225/40 R 19 93 H XL A/S	2.7 / 39	3.0 / 44
Front: 225/45 R 18 95 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 255/40 R 18 99 Y XL	-	2.5 / 36
Front: 225/40 R 19 93 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 255/35 R 19 96 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL	2.9 / 42	-
Rear: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 225/45 R 18 95 V XL M+S	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 255/40 R 18 99 V XL M+S	-	2.5 / 36
Front: 225/40 R 19 93 H XL M+S	2.7 / 39	-

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Rear: 255/35 R 19 96 H XL M+S	-	2.7 / 39
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/80 R 17 102 M	4.2 / 60	

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

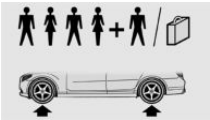
Warning

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

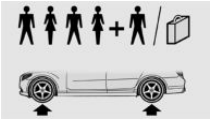
For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

Tire pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

330i, 330i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 98 H XL M+S	2.3 / 33	2.6 / 38
225/45 R 18 95 H XL A/S 225/45 R 18 95 H XL M+S	2.5 / 36	2.9 / 42
225/40 R 19 93 H XL A/S	2.7 / 39	3.1 / 45
Front: 225/45 R 18 95 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 255/40 R 18 99 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 225/40 R 19 93 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 255/35 R 19 96 Y XL	-	2.9 / 42
Front: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL	3.1 / 45	-
Rear: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL	-	3.4 / 49
Front: 225/45 R 18 95 V XL M+S	2.9 / 42	-
Rear: 255/40 R 18 99 V XL M+S	-	2.8 / 41
Front: 225/40 R 19 93 H XL M+S	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 255/35 R 19 96 H XL M+S	-	2.9 / 42
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/80 R 17 102 M	4.2 / 60	

M340i, M340i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 98 H XL M+S	2.5 / 36	2.8 / 41
225/45 R 18 95 H XL A/S 225/45 R 18 95 H XL M+S	2.7 / 39	3.1 / 45
225/40 R 19 93 H XL A/S	2.9 / 42	3.3 / 48
Front: 225/45 R 18 95 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 255/40 R 18 99 Y XL	-	2.8 / 41
Front: 225/40 R 19 93 Y XL	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 255/35 R 19 96 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL	3.3 / 48	-
Rear: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL	-	3.4 / 49
Front: 225/45 R 18 95 V XL M+S	3.1 / 45	-
Rear: 255/40 R 18 99 V XL M+S	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 225/40 R 19 93 H XL M+S	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 255/35 R 19 96 H XL M+S	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire marking

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: cross-sectional relationship in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load bearing capacity

Y: speed code letter

ZR tires: reinforced radial tire for speeds exceeding 150 mph/240 km/h

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 1922

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

1922: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread depth, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT ... 1922	19th week 2022

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Runflat tires

Runflat tires, refer to page 299, are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

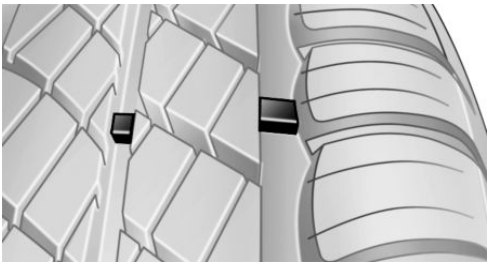
Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of aquaplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter driving conditions.

Minimum tread depth



Distributed over the tire circumference are the tire manufacturer's wear indicators with a height of at least 0.06 in/1.6 mm, which serve as an indicator of tire tread wear.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Irrespective of the wear indicators, observe the statutory regulations on the minimum tread depth.

Tire damage

General information

Check your tires regularly for damage, foreign bodies lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tire or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.
- ▷ Uneven wear pattern, e.g., increased wear in the area of the tire shoulder.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ Driving over curbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Tire pressure too low.
- ▷ Vehicle overloading.
- ▷ Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair

shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There may be a risk of accidents and risk of damage to property. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Exchanging wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Approved wheels and tires

General information

The following sizes are recommended and approved by the vehicle manufacturer for the approved wheels and tires per vehicle type and special equipment:

- Wheel and tire combinations.
- Rim designs.
- Tire sizes.
- Tire brands.

You can ask an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the approved wheels and tires for the vehicle and the special equipment.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake disks. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will impair the vehicle's handling characteristics and a variety of system functions, such as the Antilock Braking System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreated tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Winter tires can be identified by the icon with mountain and snowflake, as well as the M+S marking on the tire sidewall.

All-season tires with the M+S designation, but without icon with mountain and snowflake, have better winter characteristics than summer tires but generally do not achieve the performance of winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a sign showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of vision. The sign is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Changing runflat tires

When changing from runflat tires to standard tires, it must be ensured that the vehicle contains an emergency wheel or tire mobility kit. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel change between axles

Warning

A wheel change between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Different abrasion patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even abrasion. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After changing, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Storing tires

Tire pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.

Storage

- ▷ Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- ▷ Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- ▷ Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- ▷ Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Runflat tires

Principle

Runflat tires permit continued driving under limited conditions even in the event of a complete tire pressure loss.

General information

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree and may also include special rims.

The reinforcement of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a limited degree in the event of a tire pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Identification

Runflat tires are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Turn on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Tire repair set

Principle

With the tire repair set, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued driving.

General information

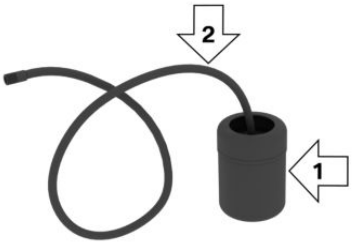
- To enable continued driving, liquid sealant is pumped into the tire, which hardens and seals the damage from the inside.
- Follow the instructions on using the tire repair set found on the compressor and sealant bottle.
- The use of a tire repair set can be ineffective if the tire puncture measures above approx. 0.16 in/4 mm.
- Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- Detach the speed limit sticker from the sealant bottle and apply it to the steering wheel.
- With the Tire Pressure Monitor: using sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Overview

Storage

Storage for the tire repair set is provided in the left storage compartment of the trunk.

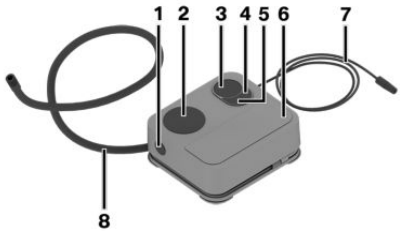
Sealant bottle



- Sealant bottle, arrow 1.
- Filler hose, arrow 2.

Observe expiration date on the sealant bottle.

Compressor



1 Sealant bottle unlocking
2 Sealant bottle mount
3 Tire pressure display
4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Turn on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

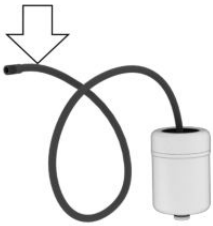
NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

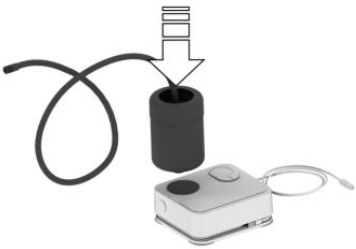
Filling

1. Shake the sealant bottle.

2. Pull filler hose completely out of the cover of the sealant bottle. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant bottle into the mount on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filler hose of the sealant bottle onto the tire valve of the faulty wheel.

5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

6. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for a maximum of 10 minutes to fill in the tire sealant and reach a tire pressure of approx. 2 bar/29 psi.

While the tire is being filled with the tire sealant, the tire pressure can briefly go up to approx. 5 bar/73 psi. Do not switch off the compressor in this phase.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display.

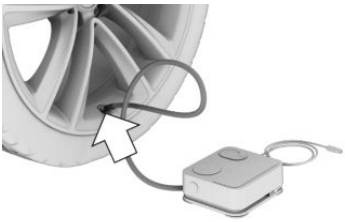
To continue the trip, a tire pressure of at least 2 bar/29 psi must be reached.

Removing and stowing the sealant bottle

1. Unscrew the filler hose of the sealant bottle from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant bottle in suitable material to avoid contamination of the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealing compound in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

5. With standby or drive readiness turned on, turn on the compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.

   If the tire pressures does not reach at least 2 bar/29 psi, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or a repair shop.

   When a tire pressure of at least 2 bar/29 psi is reached, see Minimum tire pressure is reached.
6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
8. Stow the tire repair set in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

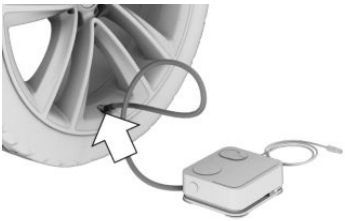
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Stow the tire repair set in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealing compound is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

4. Correct the tire pressure to at least 2 bar/29 psi:
   - ▷ Increase tire pressure: with standby or drive readiness turned on, turn on the compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
7. Stow the tire repair set in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Replace the faulty tire and the sealant bottle of the tire repair set promptly.

Additional information:

- ▷ Flat tire monitor, refer to page 312.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 305.

Tire chains

Safety information

Warning

Mounting tire chains on unsuitable tires can cause the tire chains to come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount tire chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of tire chains.

Warning

Insufficiently tight tire chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the tire chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the tire chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link tire chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link tire chains. Certain types of fine-link tire chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable tire chains is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use is only permitted in pairs on rear wheels equipped with the tires of the following wheel/tire sizes:

Tire size	Wheel size	Rim offset (IS)
225/50 R17	7.5J x 17	30
225/45 R18	7.5J x 18	25

Information on the wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list can also include wheel/tire sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information about approved wheels and tires for the vehicle can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the tire chain manufacturer's instructions.

If equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor: with tire chains, do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, otherwise, incorrect displays may occur.

If the vehicle is equipped with a flat tire monitor: with tire chains, do not initialize the flat tire monitor, otherwise, incorrect displays may occur.

When driving with tire chains, activate the Dynamic Traction Control briefly to optimize the drive power.

Maximum speed with tire chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using tire chains.

Tire pressure monitor

Principle

The Tire Pressure Monitor monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Depending on the tires detected or registered, the system displays the specified nominal pressures on the control display and compares them with the current tire pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified in the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 290.

Safety information

Warning

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a tire pressure loss will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- After each tire or wheel change, the system detects and updates the mounted tires on the control display and displays them after a short trip.

Enter the information about the mounted tires in the tire settings when the system does not automatically detect the tires.

- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel change.
  - After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel change, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The information about the mounted tires can be entered in the tire settings if the system does not automatically detect the tires.

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel change, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. "Tire settings"
6. "Tire selection"
7. "Manual"
8. "Tire type"
9. Select the tire dimension that is mounted on the rear axle.

   For tires with special approval:

   "Other tires"

   Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
10. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
11. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire pressure

The current tire pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving or depending on the outside temperature.

Current tire temperature

Depending on the model, the current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the outside temperature.

Nominal pressure

The nominal pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified nominal pressures take the influence of driving and outside temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate nominal pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and travel times.

The displayed nominal pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure details on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The nominal pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load status is changed in the tire settings.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the control display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- ▷ The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major tire pressure loss has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- ▷ Malfunction.
- ▷ During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: performing a reset

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.

   Tire settings, refer to page 306.
6. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
7. Reset tire pressure: "Perform reset".
8. Drive off.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed: "Resetting tire pressure...".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the predefined tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the control display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue driving the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Runflat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on runflat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or runflat tires.

   Runflat tires are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

   Runflat tires, refer to page 299.
3. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 310.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Runflat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on runflat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a system reset.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or runflat tires.

   Runflat tires are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

   Runflat tires, refer to page 299.
3. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 310.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Standard tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display from a tire repair set.

   For tires with special approval: when the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If tire damage cannot be found, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, for instance with a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealing compound, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Runflat tires

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

Possible distance traveled with a depressurized tire

The possible distance which may be safely traveled varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, outside temperature. The distance traveled may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the possible distance traveled may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- ▷ Greater likelihood of skidding of the vehicle.
- ▷ Longer braking distances.
- ▷ Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the target pressures are displayed on the Control Display again after a short distance.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- ▷ A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- ▷ Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- ▷ Tire Pressure Monitor malfunction: have the system checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehi-

cle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat tire monitor

Principle

The flat tire monitor detects a tire pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

The system detects tire pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- ▷ After a tire or wheel change, an initialization was carried out at the correct tire pressure.
- ▷ After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, e.g., whether the flat tire monitor is active.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- ▷ After a tire or wheel change.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with tire chains.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Flat Tire Monitor"
5. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
7. Drive off.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving continues.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is turned on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Runflat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on runflat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or runflat tires.

   Runflat tires are labeled with a circular icon containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

   Runflat tires, refer to page 299.
3. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Standard tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display from a tire repair set.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact an authorized

service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, for instance with a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

Runflat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible distance traveled with a depressurized tire

The possible distance which may be safely traveled varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, outside temperature. The distance traveled may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the possible distance traveled may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of skidding of the vehicle.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road.
- Sporty driving style: slip on traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with tire chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When using runflat tires or a tire repair set, the wheel does not always need to be changed immediately in the event of a breakdown when there is tire pressure loss.

If needed, the appropriate tool for a wheel change, e.g., a jack, is available as an accessory from an authorized service center, another qualified service center or a repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

The jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety precautions are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling if the jack tips over. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. When the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie under the vehicle and do not switch on the drive-ready state.

Warning

Supports such as wooden blocks under the jack reduce the load-carrying capacity of the jack to bear weight. The load-carrying capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded and the vehicle may tip over. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to change an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the jack.

Warning

When the jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel well.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral effort on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Using an impact wrench to loosen or tighten the wheel lock bolt can damage it. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Only use a lug wrench to loosen and tighten the wheel lock bolt.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance rocks, under the proper side of the wheels of both the front and rear axles to block the car from rolling downhill.

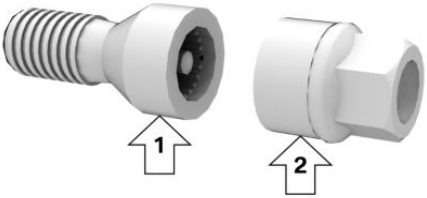
Lug bolt lock

Principle

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- ▷ Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

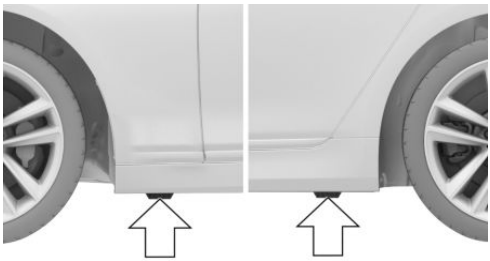
Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- ▷ Turn on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling away.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points



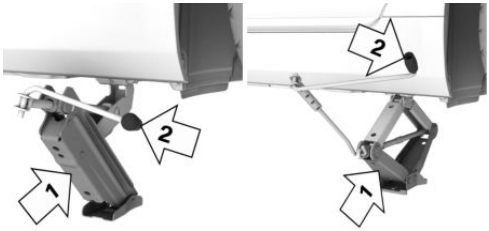
The jacking points are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

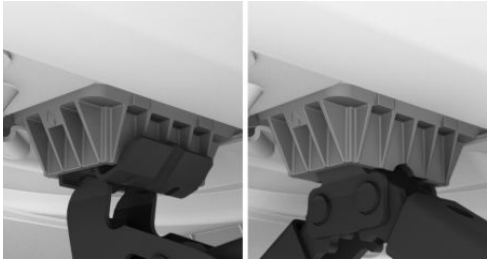
⚠ Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank handle or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.

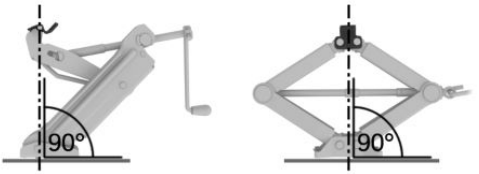


2. Insert the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

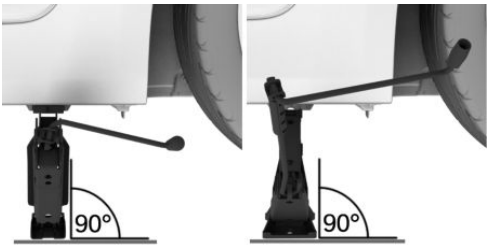


3. Extend the jack by turning the jack crank handle or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue turning the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the car jack foot extends vertically and is at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the car jack foot is vertical and at a right angle beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up until the vehicle jack has the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the jack crank handle counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire renewed at the nearest authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emergency wheel

Principle

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the faulty tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the faulty tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.

Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

Warning

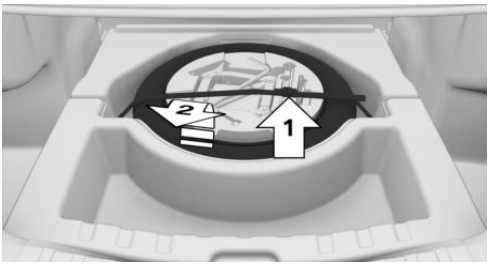
The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit range. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Overview

The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Pull the luggage compartment floor up.
2. Slacken the luggage strap at the clasp, arrow 1, but do not release completely.



3. Detach the hooks of the luggage straps at the lashing points.
4. Remove the tool holder from the emergency wheel.
5. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage tray, arrow 2.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Pull the luggage compartment floor up.
2. Place the emergency wheel in the storage tray.
3. Insert the tool holder.
4. Attach the hooks of the luggage straps at the lashing points.
5. Tie the luggage strap. Make sure that it is correctly and firmly seated.
6. Push the cargo floor panel downward.

Engine compartment

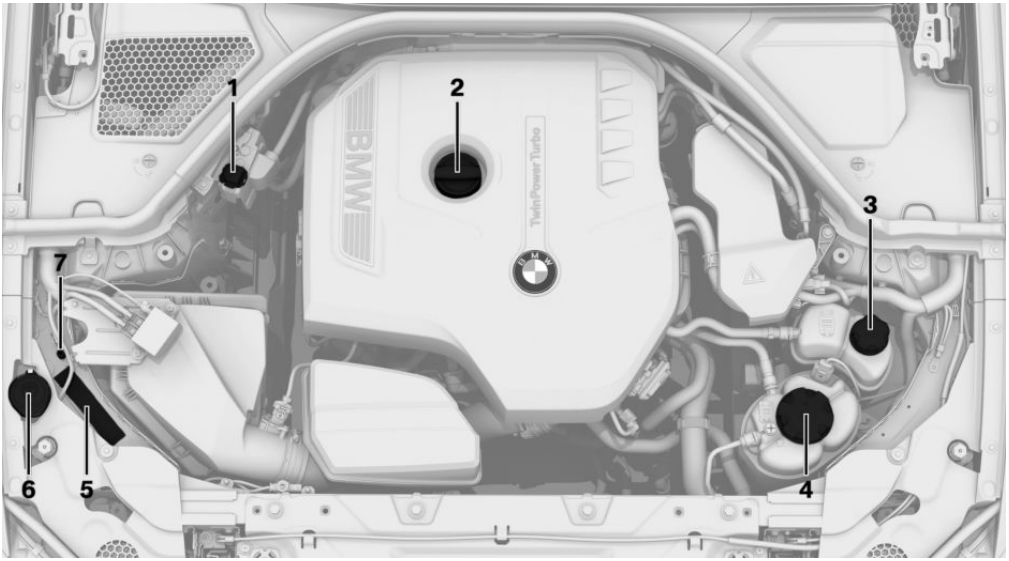
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Overview



1 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
2 Oil filler neck
3 Depending on motorization: coolant reservoir for additional radiator
4 Coolant reservoir, engine
5 Vehicle identification number
6 Filler neck for washer fluid
7 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hooks, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of hood is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening hood

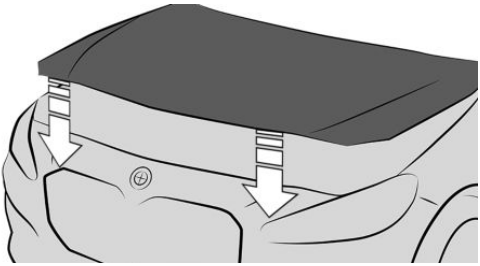
1. Pull the lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

2. Release the lever and pull it again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.
3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing the hood



Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

The power and consumption specifications refer to operating with RON 98 E10 fuel

When using minimum quality fuel like RON 91 or fuel with an ethanol content of more than 10% to max. 25%, knocking noises may occur and driving and acoustic performance may change. These have no effect on the engine service life.

Safety information

Caution

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for additional maintenance.

NOTICE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

Without ActiveFlex:

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not use fuels with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended gas quality

BMW recommends AKI 91.

M Performance model:

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 87.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption and engine oil properties depend on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ Sporty driving style.
- ▷ Break-in of the engine.
- ▷ Idle operation of the engine.
- ▷ With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages are shown on the control display depending on the engine oil level and engine oil properties.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when cornering aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ The drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ The engine is at operating temperature.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"
5. "Oil level measurement"
6. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up quantity is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles.

Store operating materials out of reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Immediately add engine oil.

⚠ NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 320.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 321.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil grade is critical for the service life of the engine.

Only add with the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil specification.

Suitable engine oil types

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-12 FE.
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil specification
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity grades
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

More information about suitable oil specifications and viscosity grades of engine oils can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and coolant additive.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant with the BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix additives of different colors. Observe the water - additive mixture ratio of 50:50. Information about suitable additives is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

Coolant level

General information

The coolant may be overfilled in the coolant reservoir when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The normal coolant level is achieved by operating the vehicle for a longer period.

The nominal coolant level is indicated by the maximum mark in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 320.

Checking the coolant level

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 321.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct when it is just below the maximum mark in the filler neck.

6. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 321.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified fill level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some types of antifreeze can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washer system. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Do not mix different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixture ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer fluid concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service

Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance recommendation using sensors and special algorithms that take into account the operating conditions of the vehicle.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the control display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 158.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Stationary periods

Stationary periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Booklet for US Models

Please consult your Maintenance Booklet for additional information on the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Diagnostic socket

General information

Devices connected to the diagnostic socket will trigger the alarm system after locking the vehicle.

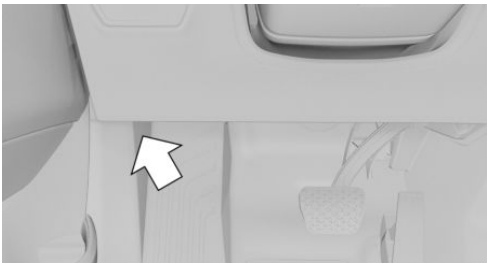
Remove devices connected to the diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is a diagnostic socket on the driver's side for reading out vehicle data.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Onboard vehicle tool kit

The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the cargo area under a cover.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

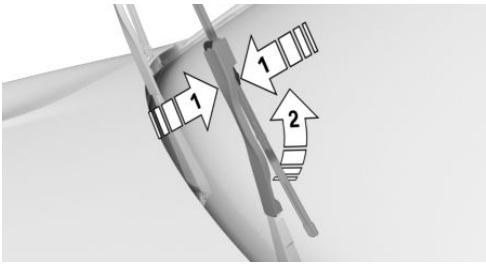
NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, bring wipers into fold-out position.

   Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 136.
2. Fold out and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Squeeze the retaining spring, arrow 1, and fold up the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Remove the wiper blade forward from the detent.
5. Insert the new wiper blade in reverse order of removal until it locks in place.
6. Fold in the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to driving safety.

All headlights and lights are designed using LED technology at least.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are designated Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

Safety information

Warning

Intense brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

The inside of the headlight glass can fog up in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If, despite driving with the headlights switched on, moisture such as water droplets increasingly forms in the light, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at an authorized service center.

Registering the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been changed. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without limitation and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery when acceleration is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- ▷ Frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ Stationary periods of more than one month.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

With Mild Hybrid technology: charge the battery only when the hood is opened.

Additional information:

Jump-start terminals, refer to page 339.

Power interruption

After a power interruption, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▷ Parking brake, refer to page 131.
- ▷ With Memory function: store the positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.

Mild Hybrid technology

Principle

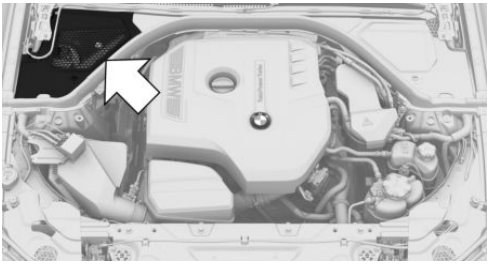
Part of the Mild Hybrid technology is a battery that works with a voltage of 48 volts. Mild Hybrid technology can lower the fuel consumption.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

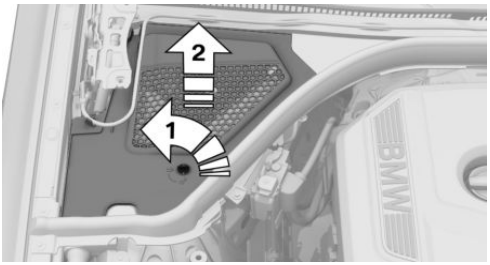
Overview



The battery for the Mild-Hybrid technology is located under a cover in the engine compartment on the front passenger side.

Removing the cover

1. Turn lid up to the opened lock symbol 🔓 arrow 1.



2. Remove cover, arrow 2.

Notice

Do not exchange or work on the battery for the Mild Hybrid technology.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

Information on the fuse layout and the positions of the fuse boxes is available on the Internet: fusecard.bmw.com.

Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

Breakdown Assistance

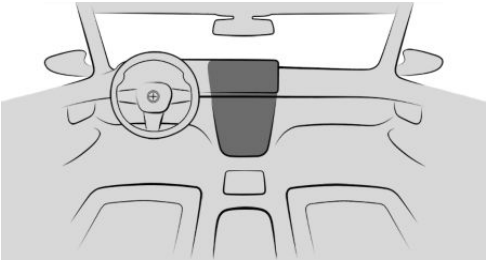
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

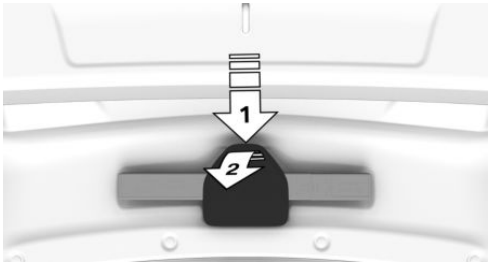
Hazard warning system



Hazard warning system button

The red light in the button blinks when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the tailgate.

Press on the release, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

First-aid kit

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with a first-aid kit.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

Storage for the first-aid kit is provided in the right storage compartment of the cargo area.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- ▷ Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary text messages, refer to page 148.
- ▷ Via a call with a mobile phone.
- ▷ Via the BMW app.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Roadside Assistance manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is first offered through Teleservice Diagnosis and, where applicable, then through Teleservice Help.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. Select the desired service.

A voice connection to the selected service is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnostics enables detailed vehicle data to be transmitted via cellular networks, which is necessary for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the control display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Turn on control display.
4. Consent to Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not deploy any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is triggered, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the control display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 147.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "MENU"
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. If necessary, select the entry for BMW Accident Assistance.

   Follow the displays on the control display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Call

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

In case of an emergency, an emergency call can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

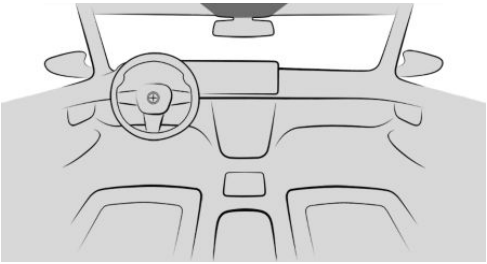
Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with an Assist system.

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview



SOS button

Functional requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ The Assist system is functional.
- ▷ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for example if the airbags are deployed, an emergency call is automatically triggered immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

- ▷ The LED is illuminated green when an emergency call has been initiated.

  If a cancel prompt appears on the control display, the emergency call can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the emergency call.

Malfunction

The function of the emergency call may be impaired.

The LED near the SOS button flashes for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is displayed.

Have it checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, spark formation may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

⚠ NOTICE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical components in both vehicles.

Jump-start terminals

The jump-start terminals are located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 320.

Open the covers of the jump-start terminals.

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/components, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicles.

1. Open the lid of the jump-start terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.

   If the vehicle to be started has a diesel engine: let the engine of the assisting vehicle run for approx. 10 minutes.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first attempt to start the engine is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

Individual functions may not work correctly when towing with Front Collision Warning enabled or Cruise Control switched on. There is a risk of accident. Switch off Front Collision Warning and Cruise Control before towing.

Steptronic transmission: Transporting the vehicle

General information

Do not transport the vehicle by towing it.

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

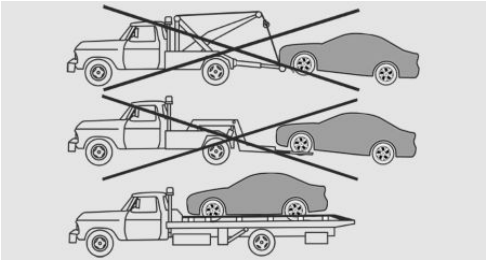
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the hazardous area, push it for a short distance at a speed of no more than 6 mph/10 km/h.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 125.

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control handling. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

Warning

Different levels of braking may occur when towing with adaptive recuperation. There is a risk of accident. Deactivate adaptive recuperation before towing.

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

If it is impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an inclination, note the following:

- Free movement is limited when cornering.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an inclination.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the attachment of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When driving off to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

Observe the following notes when using the tow fitting:

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle.
- ▷ Turn the tow fitting at least 5 turns clockwise and screw it in as far as it will go. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.
- ▷ After use, unscrew the tow fitting counterclockwise.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- ▷ Check the attachment of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 332.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the cause of the starting difficulties corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 339.

Vehicle Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign bodies such as leaves or snow in the area below the windshield.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense contamination and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Additional information:

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 136.

Safety information

NOTICE

When washing with an open fuel filler flap, damage may occur. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Clean dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

Steam cleaner and high pressure cleaner

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high pressure cleaners, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high pressure cleaners.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals and lights: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic car washes or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the body.
- ▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the window wiper system.

Driving into a car wash

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 125.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Turn on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 43.

Lights

Do not rub wet lights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents or cleaning agents containing alcohol.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with auto shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking effect can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning agents from BMW. Suitable vehicle care products are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General information

Regular vehicle care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen, can affect the vehicle paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent alterations or discolorations of the finish.

Matte paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte paintwork.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because contamination on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective coating of the leather surface.

Remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, immediately to prevent alterations or discolorations of the leather.

Synthetic leather care

Clean synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfiber cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, dust and road grime particles will rub into pores and folds, causing significant abrasion and premature degradation of the surface.

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the synthetic leather.

Fabric care

General information

In case of major contaminations, such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the fabric.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers and other cloth upholstery in the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Textile care

Use a microfiber cloth for cleaning minor contamination.

Dampen the cloth with water.

Caring for special components

Displays, operating elements, and protective glass of the Head-up display

NOTICE

Surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g., by using chemical cleaners, or from moisture or liquid of any kind. Physical damage to the material is possible.

- ▷ Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.
- ▷ Use a dry, clean antistatic microfiber cloth for cleaning displays.
- ▷ Clean the operating elements and, depending on vehicle equipment, the protective glass of the Head-up display with a damp microfiber cloth and standard household dish soap.

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral rim cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam cleaners above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective coating of adjacent components, such as the brake disk.

After cleaning, apply the brakes shortly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added auto shampoo as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface contamination of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care products at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the washer system.

Avoid cleaning the wiper blades manually, as this may reduce wiper performance.

Fine wood parts

Clean the fine wood veneer and fine wood components solely with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using a suitable care product.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Solvent cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, cold cleaning agents, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the headliner.

Seat belts

Warning

Chemical solvent cleaners can destroy the seat belt fabric. Missing protective effect of the seat belts. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Seat belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very contaminated, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the driving direction only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Taking the vehicle out of service

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems and functions that are available now and will be available in the future, even if they are not available in the owned vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. Vehicle-specific data may deviate from this, for instance due to the optional equipment chosen, national-market version, or country-specific measuring process. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on signs on the vehicle or can be obtained from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment version or country-specific measurement procedure.

The height of the vehicle can also differ, e.g., due to tires and vehicle load.

BMW 3 Series sedan		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	81.4/2,068
Width without mirrors	in/mm	71.9/1,827
Height	in/mm	57/1,448
Length	in/mm	185.9/4,723
Wheelbase	in/mm	112.2/2,851
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	39.4/12.0

Weights

330i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	4,586/2,080
Payload	lbs/kg	829/376

330i		
Approved front axle weight	lbs/kg	2,161/980
Approved rear axle weight	lbs/kg	2,579/1,170

M340i powered by BMW M		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	4,850/2,200
Payload	lbs/kg	884/401
Approved front axle weight	lbs/kg	2,348/1,065
Approved rear axle weight	lbs/kg	2,690/1,220

330i xDrive		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	4,740/2,150
Payload	lbs/kg	853/387
Approved front axle weight	lbs/kg	2,315/1,050
Approved rear axle weight	lbs/kg	2,624/1,190

M340i xDrive powered by BMW M		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	4,982/2,260
Payload	lbs/kg	882/400
Approved front axle weight	lbs/kg	2,458/1,115
Approved rear axle weight	lbs/kg	2,712/1,230

Filling capacities

BMW 3 Series sedan		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	15.6/59.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 323.

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Operation: sensors of the vehicle: radar sensors: safety instructions.
- Operation: opening and closing: BMW display key.
- Operation: driving: Launch Control.
- Operation: driving: Steptronic Sport transmission: Sprint function.
- Operation: driving stability control systems: Dynamic Stability Control: activating/deactivating Dynamic Stability Control: deactivating/activating the system.
- Operation: driving stability control systems: Dynamic Traction Control: deactivating/activating Dynamic Traction Control.
- Operation: storage compartments: fold-down compartment: safety instructions.
- Operation: cargo care: lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Everything from A to Z

Index

0–9

3D view 232
48V technology, see Mild Hybrid technology 334

A

ABS, see Antilock Braking System 197
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 127
Acceleration sensor, see G-meter 155
Accessories and parts 9
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 193
ACC, see Cruise Control with Distance Control 208
Activated carbon filter, see Interior filter 255
Activation points, panorama view 232
Activation word 54
Active Blind Spot Detection 182
Active Cruise Control 208
Active damping control, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 246
Active Guard, see Collision warning systems 170
Active M Sport differential 200
Active Park Distance Control 238
Active Protection 193
Adaptive brake assistant 197
Adaptive lighting functions 162
Adaptive M chassis/suspension 246
Adaptive recuperation 284
Adding engine oil types 327
Additives, engine oil types 327
Adjustments, steering wheel 113
After run of fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 277
Airbags 167
Airbags, indicator and warning light 169
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 251
Air conditioning, climate 251
Air distribution, manual 252
Air drying, see air conditioning 251
Air flow, automatic climate control 252
Air outlets, see Ventilation 254
Air pressure, tires 290
Air quality 254
Air vent, see Ventilation 254
Alarm system 92
Alarm, unintentional 94
All-season tires, see Winter tires 298
All-wheel-drive, see xDrive 200
Ambient light 165
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 328
Antilock Braking System 197
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 316
Apps, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Aquaplaning 278
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 197
Assistance with breakdown 336
Assisted Driving Mode, see Steering Assistant 218
Assisted Driving Plus 221
Assisted View 154
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H button, see Automatic Hold 132
Automatic camera perspective 231
Automatic climate control 247
Automatic control, headlight 159
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 112
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 169
Automatic dimming, see Automatic High Beam Assistant 163
Automatic headlight control 159
Automatic High Beam Assistant 163
Automatic Hold 132
Automatic Lane Change Assistant 223

Automatic locking 91
Automatic Parking Assistant 239
Automatic program, automatic climate control 249
Automatic time setting 155
Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission 124
Automatic unlocking 91
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
AUTO program, automatic climate control 249
Auto Start/Stop function 121
Average consumption, see Trip data 152
Axle loads, approved 348

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 104
Backrest, seats 101
Backrest tilt 103
Backrest width 104
Back-up Assistant 243
Bandages, see First-aid kit 336
Bar for tow-starting/towing 341
Battery, disposing of 335
Battery, vehicle 333
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 340
Belts, see Seat belts 105
Blind spot collision warning 182
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 96
Blower 252
Blu-ray, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Accident Assistance 337
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW Curved Display 48
BMW Digital Key 87
BMW display key 73
BMW display key, malfunction 77
BMW Drive Recorder 191
BMW ID 64
BMW iDrive 45
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
BMW Live Cockpit Plus, see BMW Curved Display 48
BMW Live Cockpit Professional, see BMW Curved Display 48
BMW maintenance system 330
BMW Operating System, see BMW iDrive 45
BMW Roadside Assistance 336
Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front 267
Bottle holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 267
Brake assistant 197
Brake assistant, adaptive 197
Brake disks, breaking in 276
Brake disks, see Brake system 276
Brake pads, breaking in 276
Brake pads, see Brake system 276
Brake system 276
Braking, information 278
Breakdown assistance 336
Breaking in 276
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 194
Brightness, Control Display 49
Button AUTO H, see Automatic Hold 132
Button, central locking system 89
Buttons on the steering wheel 32
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 338
Button, Start/Stop 121
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 339

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 341
Calendar day, see Date 155
Calibration of the front seats 104
California Proposition 65 Warning 9
Camera, instrument cluster, see Driver Attention Camera 196
Camera lenses, care 347
Camera perspective, automatic 231
Camera, rearview camera 230
Cameras, see Sensors of the vehicle 37
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 208
CANCEL button, Cruise Control 205
Can holder, front, see Cup holder, front 267
Can holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 267
Care 343

Care, displays, screens 346
Care, Head-up display 346
Care, light-alloy wheels 346
Care, vehicle 344
Cargo 269
Cargo area 269
Cargo area, enlarging 272
Cargo area, securing, see Valet parking mode 90
Cargo area with emergency wheel, enlarging 271
Cargo, stowing and securing 270
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 270
Car key, see Vehicle key 70
Carpet, care 347
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 115
Car wash 343
Car wash, automatic 343
Car wash view 232
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 277
CBS, see Condition Based Service 330
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 266
Center console 35
Central display area, instrument cluster 152
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 48
Central locking switch, see Central locking system 89
Central locking system 89
Central screen, see BMW Curved Display 48
Central screen, see Control Display 48
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Change, wheels and tires 297
Changing parts 332
Changing wheels 315
Charging cradle 263
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 263
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 263
Chassis/suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 246
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 13
Check Control 147
Checking the engine oil level electronically 325
Children, seating position 115
Children, transporting safely 115
Child restraint seats 115
Child restraint systems, mounting 116
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 115
Child safety latch 120
Child safety locks 120
Child seat installation 116
Child seat, mounting 116
Child seat mountings LATCH 117
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 115
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 346
Chrome surfaces, care 346
Cleaning, displays, screens 346
Cleaning, Head-up display 346
Clearance, water 278
Climate comfort laminated safety glass 277
Climate control 247
Closing with the Key Card 85
Closing with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 87
Clothes hooks 268
Coasting 285
Coasting with idling engine 285
Coat hooks 268
Collision warning systems 170
Combination switch, see Turn signals 133
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 134
Comfort Access 80
COMFORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 129
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 318
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 47
Compartments in the doors 266
Compressor 301
Concierge Service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Condensation water under the parked vehicle 279
Condensation, windshield 253
Condition Based Service 330
Confirmation signal from the vehicle 91
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle 57
Connection, electrical devices, see Sockets 261
Consumption, see Trip data 152
Contactless operation of the trunk lid 84
Contacts, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continued driving with a flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 305
Continued driving with flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 312
Control Display 48
Control Display, brightness 49
Control display, pop-ups 47
Control systems, driving stability 197
Coolant 327
Coolant level 328
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 151
Cooling, maximum 251
Cooling system 327
Cornering light 162
Corrosion, brake disks 279
Cosmetic mirror 261
Cross traffic warning 189
Cruise Control, see Cruise Control with Distance Control 208
Cruise Control with Distance Control 208
Cruise Control without Distance Control 205
Cruising range 156
Cup holder, front 267
Cup holder, rear 267
Current driving condition 157
Curved Display 48
Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Customer Support 6

D

Damage, tires 296
Damping control active, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 246
Dashboard 32
Dashboard, see Instrument cluster 138
Dashcam, see BMW Drive Recorder 191
Data memory 10
Data protection, settings 63
Data, see Personal data, deleting 63
Data, technical 348
Date 155
Daytime driving lights 162
Daytime running lights 162
DCC, see Cruise Control without Distance Control 205
Defrost function 253
Defrost, windshield 253
Deleting, personal data 63
Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation 255
Departure time, preconditioning via Remote Engine Start 257
Departure time, pre-ventilation 255
Destination input 6
Diagnostic connection 331
Diagnostic socket 331
Differential lock 200
Digital Key 87
Digital Key, see BMW Digital Key 87
Dimensions 348
Dimmable exterior mirrors 112
Dimmable interior mirror 112
Direct dial buttons, see Shortcuts 48
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 133
Display and operating concept, see BMW iDrive 45
Display, current driving condition 157
Display, iDrive 47
Display in the windshield, see Head-up display 140
Display key 73
Display key, malfunction 77
Display key, see BMW display key 73
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 164
Display panel, see Instrument cluster 138

Displays 138
Displays and icons 7
Displays for the vehicle, see Live Vehicle 139
Display, speed limiting function, see Speed Limit Info 201
Display SPRINT 128
Disposal, coolant 328
Disposal, vehicle battery 335
Distance control, see Cruise Control 208
Distance warning, see Park Distance Control 235
Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights 161
Door opening angle 234
Drive-off assistant 197
Drive-off assistant, see Dynamic Stability Control 197
Drive power reduced 149
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera 196
Driver assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 226
Driver assistance systems 201
Driver Attention Camera 196
Drive readiness, see Operating condition of the vehicle 42
Drive-ready state, engine start 43
Drive Recorder 191
Driver profiles 64
Driver profiles, welcome screen 64
Driving 121
Driving Assistant, see Collision warning systems 170
Driving comfort 246
Driving condition, display 157
Driving Dynamics Control 129
Driving mode, see Driving Dynamics Control 129
Driving notes, breaking in 276
Driving notes, general 277
Driving stability control systems 197
Driving, Start/Stop button 121
Driving style analysis, ECO PRO 284
Driving through water 278
Driving tips, see General driving notes 277
DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control 197
DTC, see Dynamic Traction Control 199
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 246
Dynamic Stability Control 197
Dynamic Traction Control 199

E

ECO PRO, driving style analysis 284
ECO PRO, see Driving Dynamics Control 129
Efficient4x4, see xDrive 200
Efficient rolling, see Current driving condition 157
Electric motor sound 246
Electronic oil measurement 325
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control 197
E-mail, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency brake, see Emergency stop assistant 188
Emergency braking, see PostCrash – iBrake 194
Emergency call 338
Emergency service, see BMW Accident Assistance 337
Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 336
Emergency stop assistant 188
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 126
Emergency unlocking, trunk lid 85
Emergency wheel 318
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 149
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 121
Engine compartment 320
Engine coolant 327
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 285
Engine oil filler neck 326
Engine oil, topping up 326
Engine oil types to add 327
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 43
Engine start, see Jump-starting 339
Engine stopping, see Drive-ready state 43
Engine temperature 151
Entering a destination, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster 148
Entry comparison 47
Equipment, interior 259
Error indicators, see Check Control 147
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see Dynamic Stability Control 197
Evasion Assistant, see Forward Collision Mitigation 172
Exchange, wheels and tires 297
Exhaust gas particulate filter 277
Exhaust gas system 277
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 277
Exterior lighting, locked vehicle 161
Exterior mirror 111
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 112
External start, see Jump-starting 339
Eyelet for towing 342
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 270

F

Factory settings, see Vehicle data, resetting 63
Failure message, see Check Control 147
Fan after run, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 277
Fan, see Air flow 252
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts 105
Fatigue Alert 194
Fatigue Alert, see Driver Attention Camera 196
Fatigue warner, see Fatigue Alert 194
Fault indicators, see Check Control 147
Filler neck for engine oil 326
Filter, see Interior filter 255
Fine wood, care 346
Fine wood parts, care 346
First-aid kit 336
Flat tire, changing wheels 315
Flat tire, continued driving, see Flat tire monitor 312
Flat tire, continued driving, see Tire Pressure Monitor 305
Flat tire message, see Flat tire monitor 313
Flat tire message, see Tire Pressure Monitor 308
Flat tire monitor 312
Flat tire, repairing 300
Flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 312
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 305
Flat tire warning light, see Flat tire monitor 313
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 308
Flooding, driving through 278
Floor carpet, care 347
Floor mats, care 347
Fold-away position, wiper 136
Fold-out position 136
Foot brake 278
Forward Collision Mitigation 172
Forward Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Warning 172
For Your Own Safety 8
Front airbags 167
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 332
Front passenger's side exterior mirror, tilting down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 169
Front-seat passenger airbag, indicator light 170
Front seats 101
Fuel 323
Fuel cap 288
Fuel filler flap 288
Fuel filler flap, emergency unlocking 289
Fuel filler flap, manual operation 289
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 289
Fuel gauge 156
Fuel quality 323
Fuel recommendation 323
Fuel, saving 281
Fuel tank, see Filling capacity 349
Fuses 335

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 259
Gasoline 323
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 277
Gasoline quality 324
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 124
General driving notes 277
Glare shield, see Sun visor 261
Glass sunroof 96
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 99
Glopal Positioning System, navigation 6
Glove compartment 265
G-meter 155
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 348
Guest profile, see BMW ID 64

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 130
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 260
Hands-free device, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hands-free system 6
Hazard warning system 336
Head airbag 167
Headlight control, automatic 159
Headlight flasher 134
Headlight glass 333
Headlights, care 344
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 332
Headlights, turning up, dimming, see Automatic High Beam Assistant 163
Headliner 36
Head restraints and seats 101
Head restraints, front 107
Head restraints, rear 109
Head-up display 140
Head-up display, care 346
Head-up display, position, saving see Memory function 113
Heated steering wheel 113
Heavy cargo, stowing 270
Height, vehicle 348
High beams 134
Hills 279
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 197
Holder for beverages, front 267
Holder for beverages, rear 267
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 259
Homepage, see Internet 7
Hood 320
Horn 32
Hotel function, see Valet parking mode 90
Hot exhaust gas system 277
Hour, see Time 155
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 333

I

iBrake – PostCrash 194
Ice, see Outside temperature 151
Ice warning, see Outside temperature 151
Iconic sounds, see Electric motor sound 246
Icons and displays 7
Identification marks, tires 294
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 13
iDrive 45
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key 70
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 70
Inclination 103
Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 170
Indicator lights 141
Individual air distribution 252
Individual settings, see BMW ID 64
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 263
Information 6
Information on Driver Assistance, displaying, see Assisted View 154
Initialization, see flat tire monitor 313
Input, iDrive 47
Installation of child restraint systems 116
Instrument cluster 138

Instrument lighting 164
Instrument panel, see Instrument cluster 138
Integrated key 71
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 6
Integrated Universal Remote Control 259
Intelligent emergency call 338
Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
Intended use 8
Interior equipment 259
Interior filter 255
Interior lights 164
Interior lights, locked vehicle 161
Interior mirror 112
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Interior mirror, manually dimmable 112
Interior motion sensor 93
Internet page 7
Intersection Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 172
Interval indicator, see Service notifications 158

J

Jacking points 317
Jacking points for the vehicle jack 317
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 99
Jam protection system, windows 96
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 124
Jump-starting 339
Jump-starting terminals 339
Jump-start terminals 339

K

Kenaf, care 346
Key Card 85
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 80
Key, mechanical 71
Key, see BMW display key 73
Key, see Vehicle key 70
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 124
Knee airbag 168

L

Labeling 294
Label on recommended tires 298
Lane boundary 179
Lane change assistant 223
Lane control assistant with active side collision mitigation 185
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation 185
Lane departure warning 179
Lane threshold, warning 179
Language, setting 55
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 270
LATCH child seat mountings 117
Launch Control 127
Leather care 345
LED headlights, changing, see Lights and bulbs 332
Length, vehicle 348
Letters and numbers, entering 47
Light-alloy wheels, care 346
Light carpet, see Welcome Light Carpet 161
Lighting 159
Light in the exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 182
Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 189
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 332
Lights 159
Lights and bulbs 332
Lights, care 344
Light switch 159
LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter 203
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 148
Live Vehicle 139
Load 270
Loading 269
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo 270
Local time, see Time 155
Lock control elements, rear automatic climate control 249
Locking, automatic 91
Locking, see Opening and Closing 70
Locking, settings 91
Lock, lug bolts 316
Loop 342
Low beams, operation 160

Lower back support, see Lumbar support 104
Lug bolt lock 316
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 279
Luggage straps 270
Lumbar support 104

M

Maintenance 330
Maintenance recommendation, see Condition Based Service 330
Maintenance, see Service requirements 158
Maintenance system, BMW 330
Make-up mirror 261
Malfunction, BMW display key 77
Malfunction, vehicle key 73
Manual brake, see Parking brake 130
Manual control, air distribution 252
Manual control, air flow 252
Manually unlocking doors, see Integrated key 71
Manual mode, transmission 126
Manual Speed Limiter 203
Map update, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Marking, run-flat tire 299
Matte paintwork 345
Matt paint, care 345
Maximum cooling 251
Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info 201
Maximum speed, winter tires 298
M chassis/suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 246
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 336
Memory function 113
Messages, see Check Control 147
Meters, see Instrument cluster 138
Microfilter, see Interior filter 255
Mild Hybrid technology 334
Minimum tread depth, tires 296
Mirror position, saving, see Memory function 113
Mobile devices, connecting 57
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobile radio in the vehicle 278
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 337
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 336
Mobility System, see Tire repair set 300
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 208
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Moisture 333
Monitor, see Control Display 48
Mounting of child restraint systems 116
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M Sport differential, active 200
Multifunction hook 271
Multi-function steering wheel 32
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 32
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints, front 107
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints, rear 109
Net, cargo area 271
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care 346
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 341

O

OBD, see On-board diagnosis 331
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 229
Octane number, see Gasoline quality 324
Odometer, see Trip data 152
OFF display, instrument cluster, see Standby and Drive readiness 151
Oil filler neck 326
Oil level, checking electronically 325

Oil service interval, see Service notifications 158
Oil, topping up 326
Oil types to add, engine 327
Old battery 335
On-board computer, see Trip data 152
On-board diagnosis 331
Onboard vehicle tool kit 332
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance 337
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 336
Opening and closing 70
Opening with the Key Card 85
Opening with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 87
Operating condition of the vehicle 42
Operating menus, see BMW iDrive 45
Operating principle, see BMW iDrive 45
Operating temperature, see Engine temperature 151
Operation via voice 53
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 8
Outside temperature 151
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 151
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 347
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 55

P

Paint, vehicle care 345
Paintwork 345
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 93
Panic mode 93
Panorama View 232
Panorama View, see Panorama View 232
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 96
Park Distance Control 235
Parking aid lines, rearview camera 229
Parking assistance, see Park Distance Control 235
Parking assistance systems 226
Parking assistant 239
Parking Assistant Plus, see Parking assistance systems 226
Parking Assistant, see Parking assistance systems 226
Parking brake 130
Parking brake function, Active Park Distance Control 238
Parking lights 160
Parking with Automatic Hold 132
Particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 277
Parts and accessories 9
Pathway lighting 161
Pathway lighting, turning on 161
Pathway lines, rearview camera 229
Payload 270
Payload, technical data 348
PDC, see Park Distance Control 235
Pedestrian Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 172
Performance Control 246
Performance display, see Sport displays 158
Personal Assistant 53
Personal data, deleting 63
Personal profile, see BMW ID 64
Personal settings 63
Physical units, see Units of measurement, setting 156
Plastic, care 346
Plastic parts, care 346
Pop-ups, control display 47
PostCrash – iBrake 194
Power Display, instrument cluster 149
Power failure 334
Power interruption 334
Power Meter, see Power Display 149
Power windows 94
Pre-conditioning 256
Pressure monitor, tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 305
Pressure, tires 290
Pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 312
Pressure warning, see Tire Pressure Monitor 305
Pre-ventilation 255

Prevention of rear-end collision, see Rear-end collision preparation 187
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 99
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 96

Q

Queuing Assistant, see Assisted Driving Plus 221

R

Racing track 280
Radar sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 37
Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 277
Radiator fluid 327
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 135
READY display, instrument cluster, see Standby and Drive readiness 151
Rear automatic climate control 247
Rear automatic climate control, lock control elements 249
Rear-end collision preparation 187
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 332
Rear seat backrests, folding down 272
Rearview camera 230
Rear-view mirror, exterior 111
Rearview mirror, interior 112
Rear window defroster 253
Recirculated-air mode 251
Recirculating air filter, see Interior filter 255
Recommended tire brands 298
Recuperation, adaptive 284
Reduced drive power 149
Refueling 288
Remote 3D View 234
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote control, see Vehicle key 70
Remote control, universal 259
Remote Engine Start, see Stationary climate control 256
Remote services, app, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade 59
Renewal, wheels and tires 297
Replace battery, vehicle key 71
Replacement, wheels and tires 297
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 332
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 332
Replacing parts 332
Reporting safety malfunctions 14
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control 208
RES CNCL button, Cruise Control 205
Reserve warning, see Range 156
Reservoir, washer fluid 328
Resetting, Tire Pressure Monitor 307
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 307
Reset, vehicle settings 63
Restricted Driving, see BMW Digital Key 87
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 208
RESUME button, Cruise Control 205
Retreaded tires 298
Reversing Assistant 243
Roadside parking lights 160
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 260
Rolling to a stop with engine decoupled, see Coasting 285
RON, see gasoline quality 324
Roofliner 36
Roof-mounted luggage rack 279
Rope for tow-starting/towing 341
Route, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC, see Runflat tires 299
RTTI, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber components, care 346
Runflat tires 299
Runflat tires, see Runflat tires 299

S

Safe braking 278

Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key 87
Safety and warning, see Collision warning systems 170
Safety locks, doors, and windows 120
Safety package, see Active Protection 193
Safety switch, windows 96
Safety systems, see Airbags 167
Safety systems, see Collision warning systems 170
Screen, see BMW Curved Display 48
Screen, see Control Display 48
Sealing compound, see Tire repair set 300
Seat belt reminder 106
Seat belts 105
Seat belts, care 347
Seat calibration 104
Seat heating 253
Seating position for children 115
Seat position, saving, see Memory function 113
Seats and head restraints 101
Seats, front 101
Securing, cargo 270
Selection list on the instrument cluster 148
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 124
Sensors, care 347
Sensors of the vehicle 37
Service and warranty 10
Service Center, see BMW Accident Assistance 337
Service Center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 336
Service notifications 158
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service 330
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
SET button, Active Cruise Control 208
SET button, Cruise Control 205
Set clock 155
Set day, see Date 155
Set time, see Time 155
Setting, Control Display 49
Settings, locking/unlocking 91
Settings, resetting, vehicle 63
Settings, seats and head restraints 101
Shift lights 151
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 126
Shift point display 149
Shift point indicator, tachometer 151
Shift recommendation for fuel-efficient driving, see Shift point display 149
Shortcuts, iDrive 48
Side airbag 167
Side collision mitigation 185
Side protection, Park Distance Control side, see side protection 231
Side view 231
Signaling, horn 32
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 91
Sitting safely 101
Sleep mode, see Operating condition of the vehicle 42
Slipperiness, see Outside temperature 151
Slippery road, see Outside temperature 151
Smallest turning circle, vehicle 348
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice control 56
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Sockets, electrical devices 261
Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade 59
Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 59
Soot particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 277
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 338
Sound 6
Sound of drivetrain 246
Sound output, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 318
Speech recognition 53
Speed Limit Assist 215
Speed Limit Assistant 215
Speed Limit Device, Speed Limiter 203
Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info 201
Speed Limit Info 201

Speed warning 201
Sport chassis/suspension, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 246
Sport displays 158
Sport program, transmission 124
SPORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 129
Sport steering, variable 200
Sprint function 128
Stability control systems 197
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 8
Standby, see Operating condition of the vehicle 42
Start/stop, automatic function 121
Start/Stop button 121
Starting aid terminals 339
Starting, see Drive-ready state 43
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 43
Starting the engine with the Key Card 85
Stationary climate control via Remote Engine Start 256
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 307
Status information, iDrive 46
Status of Owner's Manual 8
Status, vehicle 157
Steering and Lane Control Assistant 218
Steering Assistant 218
Steering Assistant, see Steering and Lane Control Assistant 218
Steering column adjustment 113
Steering wheel, adjusting 113
Steering wheel, buttons 32
Steering wheel heating 113
Steering wheel position, saving, see Memory function 113
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 124
Steptronic transmission 124
Stopping the engine, see Drive-ready state 43
Storage compartment, cargo area 271
Storage compartment, center console 266
Storage compartments 265
Storage, tires 299
Storing the vehicle 347
Stowing, cargo 270
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 270
Summer tires, tread 296
Sun visor 261
Supplementary Owner's Handbooks 7
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 7
Suspension settings, see Driving Dynamics Control 129
Switches, see Dashboard 32
Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Dynamics Control 129
SYNC program, automatic climate control 252
System language, setting, see Language, setting 55

T

Tachometer 150
Tail light, changing, see Lights and bulbs 332
Taking the vehicle out of service 347
Tank capacity 349
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 348
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster 148
Teleservices, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 250
Temperature display, see outside temperature 151
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 92
Thigh support 104
Tilt alarm sensor 93
Tilt, backrest 103
Tilting down, front passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Time 155
Time of day, see Time 155
Time setting, automatic 155
Time zone 155
Tire brands, recommended 298
Tire chains 304
Tire change 297
Tire damage 296

Tire identification marks 294
Tire inflation pressure 290
Tire marking 294
Tire pressure 290
Tire Pressure Monitor 305
Tire pressure monitoring, see Flat tire monitor 312
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 307
Tire Pressure Monitor, resetting 307
Tire pressure, tires 290
Tire pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 312
Tire repair set 300
Tires and wheels 290
Tire sealant, see Tire repair set 300
Tire settings 306
Tires, run-flat 299
Tire tread 296
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tools 332
Torque display, see Sport displays 158
Touchpad, Controller 51
Tow bar 341
Tow fitting 342
Towing 340
Tow rope 341
Tow-starting 340
Traction Control 199
Traction control system, see Dynamic Stability Control 197
TRACTION, driving dynamics 199
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Traffic Jam Assistant, see Assisted Driving Plus 221
Traffic jam assistant, see Steering and Lane Control Assistant 218
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 126
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 124
Transporting children safely 115
Tread, tires 296
Trip data 152
Triple turn signal activation 134
Trip odometer, see Trip data 152
Trunk, emergency unlocking 85
Trunk lid, contactless operation 84
Trunk lid, emergency unlocking 85
Trunk, see Cargo area 269
Turning circle lines, rearview camera 229
Turning circle, vehicle 348
Turn signal, indicator light 144
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 332
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 133

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 37
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 94
Units of measurement, setting 156
Units, see Units of measurement, setting 156
Universal remote control 259
Unlocking, automatic 91
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 70
Unlocking, settings 91
Updates made after the editorial deadline 8
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 59
Upholstery material care 345
Upper retaining strap, top tether 119
USB port, position in vehicle 262
Used battery, disposing of 335
Use, intended 8

V

Valet parking mode 90
Vanity mirror 261
Variable sport steering 200
Vehicle battery 333
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 336
Vehicle, breaking in 276
Vehicle care 344
Vehicle care products 344
Vehicle data, resetting 63
Vehicle equipment 8
Vehicle identification number 13
Vehicle issues 336
Vehicle key 70
Vehicle key, additional 70
Vehicle key, integrated key 71

Vehicle key, loss 71
Vehicle key, malfunction 73
Vehicle key, replace battery 71
Vehicle key with display, malfunction 77
Vehicle key with display, see BMW display key 73
Vehicle paint, care 345
Vehicle paintwork 345
Vehicle status 157
Vehicle storage 347
Ventilation 254
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation 255
Venting, see Ventilation 254
Version Software, see Remote Software Upgrade 59
Video recording, see BMW Drive Recorder 191
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 13
Voice activation system 53
Voice command response 53
Voice control 53
Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
Voice control system 53

W

Wake word 54
Warning against cross traffic 189
Warning function, rear-end collision 187
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 182
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 189
Warning lights 141
Warning messages, see Check Control 147
Warning systems for collision hazard 170
Warning triangle 336
Warranty 9
Warranty Booklet, see Warranty 9
Washer fluid 328
Washer system 134
Washing the vehicle 343
Washing, vehicle 343
Water on roads 278
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 279
Web page 7
Website, see Internet 7
Weights 348
Welcome Light Carpet, see Welcome light 161
Welcome lights 161
Welcome screen, driver profiles 64
Wheelbase 348
Wheel base, vehicle 348
Wheel change 315
Wheels and tires 290
Wheels and tires, exchange 297
Widgets, iDrive 46
Widgets, instrument cluster, see Central display area 152
Width, vehicle 348
Window, defrosting 253
Windows, powered 94
Windshield, defrosting 253
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 328
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 134
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 347
Winter tires 298
Winter tires, tread 296
Wiper blades, changing 332
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 328
Wiper, fold-away position 136
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system 134
Wiper system 134
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 263
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 263
Wood, care 346
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 47
Workshop, see Service requirements 158
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 332

X

xDrive 200

01405A5F6E0 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A5F6E0 - VI/22

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

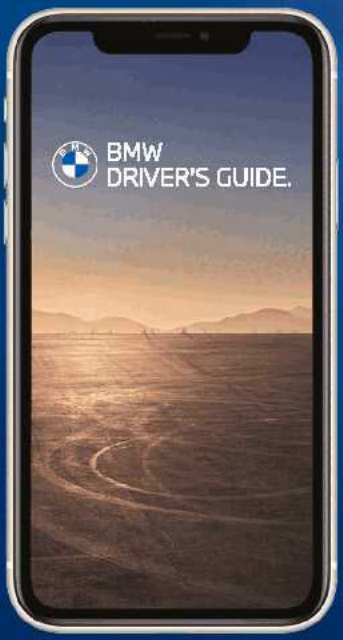
WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The BMW Driver's Guide app explains the equipment of your vehicle and offers further scopes and functions:



- All information surrounding navigation, entertainment and communication
- Photorealistic animations for various vehicle functions
- Keyword search
- 360° view: Explore your vehicle interactively inside and out
- Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons in the vehicle
- Available in more than 30 languages
- Can be used offline after download

01405A5F6E0 ue

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A5F6E0 - VI/22